docomo
NTT

XPERIA A SO-04E

INSTRUCTION MANUAL
'13.4

Introduction

Thank you for your purchase of "SO-04E". For proper use of the SO-04E, read this manual carefully before and while you use the SO-04E.

About manuals of SO-04E

In addition to this manual, the operations of SO-04E are described in "クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide)" (in Japanese only) and "Instruction Manual" application of the terminal (in Japanese only).

● "クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide)" (Supplied accessories)
The initial operations and settings after purchasing the terminal, screen view contents and operations of main function are explained.

● "Instruction Manual" (Application of the terminal)
Similarly to this manual, operations and settings of each function are explained. To use "Instruction Manual" application, from the Home screen, tap ⊞ and [Instruction Manual]. When using for the first time, download and install the application according to the onscreen instructions. You can use the application as an electronic book. You can also shift to actual operations by tapping the description in the contents or view reference contents.

❖Note
• For downloading or updating the application, a high packet communication charge will be applied because of a large amount data communication. For this reason, subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.

● "Instruction Manual" (PDF file)
Operations and settings of each function are explained. It can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website.
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/manual/download/index.html
* You can download the latest information of "クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide)". The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

#### ❖Note
• Reproduction or reprint of all or part of this manual without prior permission is prohibited.
• Important information for SO-04E is posted in the following website. Be sure to check before using.
http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/support/use_support/product/so-04e/ (In Japanese only)

● スマホなるほどツアーズ (Tips of smartphone) (widget of the terminal) (in Japanese only)
An widget with which you can easily learn useful functions and basic operations you should know with Docomodake.
To use スマホなるほどツアーズ (Tips of smartphone), from the Home screen, tap ▦.

In this manual, each key operation is described with
⊙, ⤺, ⌂, ⎚, ◁▷, ◘. And selection
operations of the icons or function items on the
touch screen are described as follows.

Description	Operation
From the Home screen, tap ▦ and tap [Settings]▶[About phone].	From the Home screen, tap ▦ (Applications button), and then tap "Settings" on the next screen and "About phone" on the following screen in order.
Touch and hold an icon.	Keep touching an icon longer (1-2 seconds).

❖**Information**
- In this manual, the instructions are described with the default Home screen. If you set the other application to the home screen, the operations may differ from the descriptions.
- Display examples and illustrations used in this manual are just images for explanations and may be different from actual ones.
- In this manual, the easier procedure is described for the functions and settings which have multiple operating procedures.
- Please note that "SO-04E" is called "the terminal" in this manual.
- In this manual, explanations for "docomo" as Home application are provided. To switch the Home applications, see "Switching Home application" (P.58).

Supplied accessories

- SO-04E (with warranty)

- Back Cover SO22

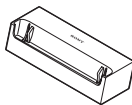- クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide) (In Japanese only)

- SO-04Eのご利用にあたっての注意事項
  安全上／取り扱い上のご注意
  (Notes on usage Safety/Handling
  precautions) (In Japanese only)

- Battery Pack SO09

- Desktop Holder SO17 (with warranty)

For details on optional devices, see "Optional and related devices" (P.258).

Contents

Settings 194

File management 229

Data communication 233

External device connection . 242

International roaming 249

Appendix/Index 258

About using the terminal

- The terminal supports LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS and Wireless LAN Systems.
- Because a terminal operates using radio frequencies, it cannot be used inside a tunnel, underground, in a building or other locations where radio waves do not reach the terminal, in locations with weak radio wave condition, or out of Xi/FOMA service area. The services may not be available on high upper floors of high-rise apartments or buildings, even if you can see no obstructions around you. On occasion, your calls may become disconnected even in areas with strong radio wave condition, even if you are not moving, or even if there are 4-antenna marks in the terminal's display.
- Because your terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically scrambles all calls through a private call feature. Therefore, even if third party successfully intercepts your call, they will only hear noise.
- The terminal operates on radio frequencies by converting voice into digital signals. If the caller moves into an area of adverse radio wave condition, the digital signal may not be restored accurately, and the voice received in the call may differ slightly from the actual voice.
- Note down the information saved in the terminal in a separate note and keep it safely. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of the terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card.
- As with PCs, some user-installed applications may disrupt the stability of the terminal performance, or unexpectedly transmit information via the Internet causing improper use of your location information as well as personal information recorded on the terminal. Therefore, verify the supplier and operating conditions of the applications to be used before using them.
- This terminal has Xi Area, FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area support.
- The terminal does not support i-mode sites (programs) or i-αppli.

- The terminal automatically performs communication for synchronizing data, checking the latest software version, maintain connection with the server, etc. If you transmit a large amount of data such as downloading applications or watching video, a packet communication charge becomes high. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- Depending on the applications or service you use, packet communication charge may be applied even in Wi-Fi communication.
- Since Mobacas is a service linking communication, using the service requires packet communication charge. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is recommended.
- Public mode (Driving mode) is not supported.
- Setting the terminal to the silent mode does not mute sounds for shutter, playback of video or music, alarm, dial pad touch tones during a call, sound emitted when tapping [End call], etc.
- The name of the operator is displayed on unlock screen (P.38).
- To check your phone number (own number), from the Home screen, tap 🔠 and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Status] to see "My phone number".
- To check the software version, from the Home screen, tap 🔠 and tap [Settings]▶[About phone].

- You can perform software update by downloading an update file with a PC via Internet and connecting the PC to the terminal. For details, see "Connecting to a PC and updating" (P.273).
- By some software updates, the operating system (OS) may be version-upgraded for improving the terminal quality. For this reason, you always need to use the latest OS version. And some applications that used in the previous OS version may not be available or some unintended bugs may occur.
- You can use the terminal only with docomo mini UIM card. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace.
- Set the screen lock to ensure the security of your terminal for its loss. For details, see "Screen lock" (P.219).
- If your terminal is lost, change your each account password to invalidate authentication using a PC to prevent other persons from using Google services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc., Facebook, Twitter and mixi.
- For services provided by Google, refer to Google Terms of Service. For other web services, refer to each terms of service.
- Google application and service contents are subject to change without prior notice.

- The terminal supports only sp-mode, mopera U and Business mopera Internet. Other providers are not supported.
- To use tethering, subscription of sp-mode is required.
- Packet communication charge when using tethering varies depending on the charging plan you use. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- For details on usage charge, etc., refer to the following website.
  http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/
- Display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in the terminals.

Safety Precautions (Always follow these directions)

■ For safe and proper use of the terminal, please read the "Safety Precautions" prior to use. Keep the Manual in a safe place for future reference.

■ ALWAYS observe the safety precautions since they intend to prevent personal injury or property damage.

■ The following symbols indicate the different levels of injury or damage that may result if the guidelines are not observed and the terminal is used improperly.

⚠ **DANGER**	Failure to observe these guidelines may immediately result in death or serious injury.
⚠ **WARNING**	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in death or serious injury.
⚠ **CAUTION**	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in injury and property damage.

■ The following symbols indicate specific directions.

⊘ Don't	Indicates prohibited actions.
⊗ No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble.
⊗ No liquids	Indicates not to use where it could get wet.
⊗ No wet hands	Indicates not to handle with wet hands.
❗ Do	Indicates compulsory actions in accordance with instructions.
🔌 Unplug	Indicates to remove the power plug from the outlet.

■ "Safety Precautions" are described in the following categories:

1. Handling the terminal, battery pack, adapter, desktop holder, docomo mini UIM card (common)

⚠ DANGER

⊘ Don't
Do not use, store or leave the equipment in hot places (e.g. by the fire, near a heater, under a kotatsu, in direct sunlight, in a car in the hot sun). (including the event that you ware the equipment in the pocket of your clothes, etc.)
Doing so may cause fire, burns or injury.

⊘ Don't
Do not place equipment inside cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or high-pressure containers.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

⊗ No disassembly
Do not disassemble or modify the equipment.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

⊗ No liquids
Do not let the equipment get wet with water, drinking water, urine of pet animals, etc.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.
For waterproof, see →P.23. "Waterproofness/Dustproofness".

❗ Do
Use a battery pack and an adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO for the terminal.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

⚠ **WARNING**

🚫 *Don't*

Do not subject the equipment to excessive force or throw it.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

🚫 *Don't*

Do not allow the contacts for the desktop holder, the microUSB jack or headset jack to touch conducting foreign substances (a piece of metal, pencil lead, etc.). Never allow these objects to get inside.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

🚫 *Don't*

Do not cover or wrap the equipment with a cloth or bedding in use or while charging.
Doing so may cause fire or burns.

❗ *Do*

Power off the terminal before you step into a place where flammable gas can leak, such as gas stations. Stop charging if you charge the battery.
Gas may catch fire.
When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place such as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it.
(When NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)

❗ *Do*

If you notice anything unusual about the equipment such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during operation, charging or storage, immediately perform the following measures.

・Remove the power plug from the power outlet or cigarette lighter.
・Power off the terminal.
・Remove battery pack.

Failure to do so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

⚠ **CAUTION**

🚫 *Don't*

Do not place on an unstable or inclined platform.
Doing so may cause the device to fall and cause injury.

🚫 *Don't*

Do not keep in a place that is very humid, dusty, or subject to high temperature.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

❗ *Do*

If children use the terminal, parents or guardians should give them the proper instructions for use. Make sure that they use the terminal as instructed.
Failure to do so may cause injury.

❗ *Do*

Keep the equipment out of the reach of babies and infants.
Failure to do so may cause accidental swallowing or injury.

	Be careful especially when using the terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.
Do	If you play a game, watch 1Seg, etc. for a long time while charging, the temperature of the terminal, battery pack and adapter may rise. If you are directly in contact with hot parts for a long period of time, it may cause your skin to become red, itchy, or develop a rash depending on your physical condition and also it may cause low-temperature burn.

2. Handling the terminal

⚠ **WARNING**

	Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.
Don't	Doing so may cause harmful effect your eyes.

	Do not direct the infrared data port toward home electric appliances etc. equipped with infrared device when using infrared communication.
Don't	Doing so may cause an accident because of erroneous operation of infrared device.

	Do not turn on the light with the lighting luminescence part close to the eyes. Especially to shoot infants or young children, step away from them 1 m or more.
Don't	Doing so may cause blurred vision. Or injury by dazzling eyes or surprising may occur.

	Do not allow a foreign substance such as water and other liquids, metal parts, or flammables to get in the docomo mini UIM card or microSD card slot on the terminal.
Don't	Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

	Do not turn on the light toward a driver of a car etc.
Don't	Doing so may disturb driving and cause an accident.

	Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital.
Do	Failure to do so may affect electronic equipment and electronic medical equipment. Follow the instructions of each medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises. Prohibited acts such as mobile phone usage on board an airplane may be punished by law. If usage of mobile phones in an aircraft is admitted by setting airplane mode, etc., use the terminal under the direction of the airline. If the microUSB cable is connected into the microUSB jack for charging etc. with the terminal powered off, the terminal is automatically powered on although the operations are not available. Be careful not to connect the microUSB cable in a place where the use is prohibited such as in an airplane or hospital.

	Always keep the terminal away from your ear when you talk setting the hands-free function.
Do	

Also, when you play game, play back music, etc. connecting the Earphone/Microphone, etc. to the terminal, adjust the volume adequately.

If the volume is too loud, it may cause difficulty in hearing.

Moreover, if you barely hear the surrounding sounds, it may cause an accident.

	If you have a weak heart, set the vibrator or ringtone volume carefully.
Do	Failure to do so may affect your heart.

	If you are wearing any electronic medical equipment, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation may be affected by radio waves.
Do	

The radio waves from the terminal may affect electronic medical equipment.

	Power off the terminal near electronic devices or equipment operating on high precision control or weak signals.
Do	

Failure to do so may interfere with the operation of electronic devices or equipment.

* The followings are some electronic devices or equipment that you should be careful of: Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, other electronic medical equipment, fire detector, automatic door, and other automatically controlled devices or equipment.

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, or other electronic medical equipment, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation can be affected by radio waves.

	Be careful about broken glasses or exposed internal from the terminal if the display or the camera lens is broken.
Do	

Shatterproof film-applied hardened glass is used on the display surface and the acrylic resin is applied on camera lens so as not to be shattered when broken. But they may cause injury if you touch a cut surface or exposed portion mistakenly.

⚠ **CAUTION**

	Do not swing the terminal around by holding the antenna, strap, etc.
Don't	The terminal may hit you or others and cause accident such as injury.

	Do not use damaged terminal.
Don't	Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

	When using the motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold the terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.
Don't	May cause accident such as injuries.

	If the display is mistakenly damaged and when the liquid crystal runs out, do not get it on your skin such as face, hands, etc.
Don't	Doing so may cause blindness or injury on your skin. If the liquid crystal gets in your eye or mouth, rinse with clean running water, and get medical treatment immediately. Also, if it gets on your skin or clothes, use something such as alcohol to wipe off and wash it with soap in clear water.

	To use the terminal in car, check with automobile manufacturer or dealer to determine how the device is affected by radio waves before using.
Do	In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction. In that case, stop using the terminal immediately.

	The use of the terminal may cause itching, rashes, eczema, or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition. Immediately stop using and get medical treatment in such a case.
Do	For material of each part →P.16 "Material list"

	When watching the display, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.
Do	Failure to do so may reduce visual acuity.

3. Handling battery pack

■ Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.

Display	Type of Battery
Li-ion 00	Lithium Ion Battery

⚠ **DANGER**

	Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store the terminal with objects like a metal necklace.
Don't	Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

	Check the orientation of the battery pack to attach to the terminal, and do not try to force the battery pack onto the terminal if you are having trouble attaching it.
Don't	Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

	Do not throw the terminal into fire.
Don't	Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

	Do not stick a nail into the terminal, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.
Don't	Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

	If the battery pack fluid etc. contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.
Do	Failure to do so may cause blindness.

⚠ WARNING

Don't If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to falling, never use it.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Do If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.
The leaking liquid may ignite fire, catch fire, or explode.

Do Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't Do not discard the battery together with other garbage.
Doing so may cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the contacts of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.

Don't Do not use or charge a wet battery pack.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Do If fluid etc. leaks out from the battery pack, do not make the fluid contact with your skin of face or hands.
Doing so may cause blindness or injury on your skin. If the fluid etc. gets into your eyes or mouth, or contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area with clean running water. If the fluid gets into the eyes or mouth, immediately see a doctor after flushing.

4. Handling adapter or desktop holder

⚠ WARNING

Don't Do not use the adapter cord if it gets damaged.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a very humid place such as bathroom.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't DC adapter is only for a negative ground vehicle. Do not use DC adapter for a positive ground vehicle.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't Do not touch the adapter if you hear thunder.
Doing so may cause electric shock.

	Do not short-circuit the charging jack while it is connected to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging jack with your hands, fingers, or any part of your body. Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Don't	

	Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord. Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Don't	

	When you insert and remove the AC adapter from power outlet, do not contact a metal strap or other metal objects with the jack. Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Don't	

	Do not touch the adapter cord, desktop holder or outlet with wet hands. Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
No wet hands	

	Use the adapter only on the specified power supply and voltage. When charging the terminal overseas, use AC adapter for global use. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock. AC adapter : AC 100 V DC adapter : DC 12 V or 24 V (only for a negative-ground vehicle) AC adapter for global use : AC 100 V to 240 V (Make sure to connect the adapter to a household AC power outlet.)
Do	

	When the fuse in a DC adapter is blown, make sure to use the specified fuse. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock. For the specified fuse, see the users manuals that supplied with a DC adapter.
Do	

	Clean dust from the power plug. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Do	

	When you connect the AC adapter to the power outlet, insert it firmly. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Do	

	When you disconnect the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the adapter to disconnect. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Do	

	Always remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter when not using the adapter for an extended period. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Unplug	

	Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Unplug	

	Before cleaning, remove the power plug from the power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket. Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
Unplug	

5. Handling the docomo mini UIM card

⚠ **CAUTION**

!
Do

Be careful of the cut surface when removing docomo mini UIM card.
Failure to do so may cause injury.

6. Handling the terminal near electronic medical equipment

⚠ **WARNING**

!
Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, keep the terminal 15 cm or more away from the implant at all times.
The radio waves from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

!
Do

If you need to use electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator outside medical facilities such as treating at home, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer whether the operation may be affected by radio waves.
The radio waves from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

!
Do

When you get close to other people within 15 cm just like not having enough space to turn around, set the radio wave of the terminal to OFF beforehand (Airplane mode, to turn OFF, etc.).
A person in close proximity may put on implanted a medical electrical equipment such as pacemakers and ICDs. The radio waves from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

!
Do

Follow the instructions of each medical facility for the use of the terminal on their premises.

7. Material list

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Exterior case (side cover)	PA resin (with glass)	UV coating
Exterior case (back cover)	PC resin (with glass)	Urethan coating
Exterior case (headset jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	Urethan coating
Exterior case (microUSB jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	Urethan coating
Side panel	PET resin + PC resin	Hard coating
Transparent plate (camera)	PC + PMMA resin	AR treatment
Transparent plate (flash)	PC resin	—
Transparent plate (display)	Glass + PET resin	Hard coating
Decoration ring (power key cover, camera)	Aluminum alloy	Anodic oxide coating
Side keys (power key, volume key, camera key)	Aluminum alloy	Anodic oxide coating
Mobacas/1Seg antenna (cap)	PC resin (with glass)	—
Mobacas/1Seg antenna (shaft top)	SUS	—
Mobacas/1Seg antenna (shaft middle)	SUS	—
Mobacas/1Seg antenna (shaft bottom)	Nickel titanium	—
Mobacas/1Seg antenna (hinge)	SUS	—

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Battery pack (contacts)	Copper alloy	First nickel plating/Gold plating
Battery pack (body)	PC resin	—
Battery pack (label)	PET resin	—
Desktop holder (upper case)	ABS resin	—
Desktop holder (lower case)	ABS resin	—
Desktop holder (lever)	POM resin	—
Desktop holder (contacts)	Phosphor bronze	Gold plating
Desktop holder (label)	Polyester resin	—
Desktop holder (rubber foot)	Polyester resin	—
Desktop holder (screws)	SWCH	Black chromate plating

Handling precautions

■ Common precautions

- SO-04E is waterproof/dustproof, however, do not allow water or dust to seep into the terminal and do not allow accessories or optional devices to get wet or dust.

  The battery pack, adapter, desktop holder and docomo mini UIM card are not waterproof/dustproof. Do not use in a bathroom or other highly humid area or do not let rain touch. Or putting them on your body, humidity of sweat may cause internal corrosion and malfunction. Note that malfunctions which are determined to be caused by water as result of inspections are outside the scope of the warranty. Since these conditions are outside of the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.

- Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses).
  - Do not rub it roughly with a dry cloth. The display may be damaged.
  - Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains.
  - Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzine, cleaning detergent, etc. to clean the terminal. These chemicals may erase the printing on the terminal or cause discoloration.

- Clean the terminals occasionally with a dry cotton swab.

  If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. When cleaning, be careful not to damage the terminals.

- Do not leave the terminal near the air conditioning vent.

  Extreme temperature changes may produce condensation and corrode the internal parts of the terminal, causing it to malfunction.

- Make sure to use the terminal etc. without excessive force.

  If you put the terminal in a bag full of items or sit down with the terminal in the pocket of your cloth, it may damage the display, internal circuit board, battery pack, etc. and cause malfunction. If doing so while the external device is connected to the microUSB jack or headset jack, it may damage the connector and cause malfunction.

- Do not rub or scratch the display with metal.

  The display may get scratched and it may cause malfunction or damage.

- Read the users manuals supplied with optional devices.

■ The terminal precautions

- Do not press touch screen surface forcibly, or not operate with a sharp-pointed objects such as nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.

  Doing so may cause damage of touch screen.

- Do not use the terminal in extremely hot or cold places.

  Use the terminal where the temperature ranges between 5℃ and 35℃ and humidity ranges between 45% and 85%.

- Using the terminal near land-line phone, television or radio may cause interference in these electric appliances. Make sure to move far away from them when using the terminal.
- Note down the information saved in the terminal in a separate note and keep it safely.

  Under no condition will DOCOMO be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the terminal.
- Do not drop or give a strong impact to the terminal.

  Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not insert the plug of the external device into the microUSB jack or headset jack at the slant or pull it obliquely while connecting.

  Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- The terminal could become warm while in use and charging. This condition is not abnormal. You can continue using the terminal.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.

  If you do so, some of the elements may melt or become faded.
- Usually, use the terminal with microUSB jack cover and headset jack cover closed.

  Failure to do so may get dust or water inside and cause malfunction.

- Do not use the terminal with the back cover removed.

  Doing so may cause removal of battery pack, malfunction or damage.
- Do not let magnetic cards, etc. close to the terminal.

  The magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- Do not bring strong magnetic objects close to the terminal.

  Strong magnetic objects may cause misoperation.

■ Battery pack
  - The battery pack is a consumable part.

    Replace the battery pack if the terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
  - Charge the battery in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5 ℃ to 35℃).
  - The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the secular degradation of the battery pack.
  - The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.

- Be careful especially about the following points when preserving the battery pack.
  - The battery is fully charged (immediately after the charging is complete)
  - The battery has run out (the phone cannot power on)

  The performance and life of the battery pack may deteriorate.

  It is recommended that you store the battery with the remaining battery level of about 40% as a guide.

■ The adapter precautions
- Charge the battery in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5 ℃ to 35℃).
- Do not charge in the following places.
  - Places that are very humid, dusty or exposed to strong vibrations
  - Near land-line phone or TV/radio
- The adapter cable could become warm while charging. This condition is not abnormal. You can continue using the terminal.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, do not turn off the vehicle engine.

  Doing so may cause the vehicle battery run out.

- When you use the power outlet with a mechanism to prevent the plug from being removed, follow the instructions on the outlet's user's manual.

- Do not subject the equipment to a strong impact. Do not deform the charging jack.

  Doing so may cause malfunction.

■ docomo mini UIM card
- Do not use unnecessary force to insert/remove the docomo mini UIM card.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using docomo mini UIM card with another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep the IC portion clean when you use the card.
- Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses).
- Note down the information saved in the docomo mini UIM card in a separate note and keep it safely.

  Under no condition will DOCOMO be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the terminal.

- Take an expended docomo mini UIM card to sales outlet such as docomo Shop for proper disposal in order to protect the environment.
- Do not carelessly damage, contact, or short-circuit an IC.

  Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

- Do not drop a docomo mini UIM card or subject it to impact.

  Doing so may cause malfunction.

- Do not bend a docomo mini UIM card or place a heavy object on it.
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not insert the docomo mini UIM card on which any label or seal is stuck into the terminal.
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

■ Bluetooth function precautions
- To secure the Bluetooth communication security, the terminal supports the security function compliant with Bluetooth standards, but the security may not be sufficient depending on the setting. Concern about the communication using the Bluetooth function.
- Please be aware that DOCOMO is not responsible for data leak when making data communications using Bluetooth.
- Frequency band
  The frequency band used by the terminal's Bluetooth/wireless LAN function is written as follows:

  2.4FH1/XX8/DS4/OF4

  2.4 : This radio equipment uses the 2400 MHz band.

  FH/XX/DS/OF : Modulation scheme is the FH-SS, other system, DS-SS, or OFDM system.

1 : The estimated interference distance is 10 m or less.

4 : The estimated interference distance is 40 m or less.

8 : The estimated interference distance is 80 m or less.

▬▬▬ : The full band between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz is used and the band of the mobile identification device can be avoided.

Available channels vary depending on the country.
For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand.

- Bluetooth cautions

  The operating frequency band of the terminal is used by industrial, scientific, consumer and medical equipment including microwave ovens, premises radio stations for identifying mobile units used in the manufacturing lines of plants (radio stations requiring a license), specified low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license) and amateur radio stations (hereinafter referred to as "another station").
  - Before using this equipment, confirm that "another station" is not being operated nearby.
  - In the event of the terminal causing harmful radio wave interference with "another station", promptly change the operating frequency or stop radio wave emission by turning off the power, etc.
  - If you have further questions, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page.

- Wireless LAN (WLAN) precautions
  - Wireless LAN (WLAN) exchanges information using radio waves, and allows you to freely establish LAN connection if you are within an area where radio wave reaches. On the other side, if you communicate without appropriate security settings, communications may be intercepted or hacked by malicious parties. It is recommended to make necessary security settings on your responsibility and expense.
  - Wireless LAN

    Do not use wireless LAN near magnetic devices such as electrical appliances or AV/OA devices, or in radio waves.
    - Magnetism or radio waves may increase noises or disable communications (especially when using a microwave oven).
    - When used near TV, radio, etc., reception interference may occur, or channels on the TV screen may be disturbed.
    - If there are multiple wireless LAN access points nearby and the same channel is used, search may not work correctly.

- 2.4GHz device cautions

  The operating frequency band of the WLAN device is used by industrial, scientific, consumer and medical equipment including home electric appliances such as microwave ovens, premises radio stations for identifying mobile units used in the manufacturing lines of plants (radio stations requiring a license), specified low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license) and amateur radio stations (radio stations requiring a license).
  - Before using the device, confirm that premises radio stations for identifying mobile units, specified low power radio stations and amateur radio stations are not being operated nearby.
  - If the device causes harmful radio interference to premises radio stations for identifying mobile units, immediately change the frequency band or stop use, and contact "General Inquiries" on the last page for crosstalk avoidance, etc. (e.g. partition setup).
  - If the device causes radio interference to specified low power radio stations or amateur radio stations, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page.

・5GHz device cautions

The following channel numbers and frequency bands are available in Japan.

	Channel number (Ch)	Frequency band (MHz)
5.2GHz band	36	5,180
	40	5,200
	44	5,220
	48	5,240
5.3GHz band	52	5,260
	56	5,280
	60	5,300
	64	5,320
5.6GHz band	100	5,500
	104	5,520
	108	5,540
	112	5,560
	116	5,580
	120	5,600
	124	5,620
	128	5,640
	132	5,660
	136	5,680
	140	5,700

Using wireless LAN built-into the terminal in 5.2/ 5.3 GHz outside is prohibited by the Radio Law.

Wi-Fi CERTIFIED

■ FeliCa reader/writer function precautions
  ・ FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
  ・ It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep the terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

■ Note
  ・ Do not use a remodeled terminal. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law/Telecommunications Business Act.
    A "Technical Conformity Mark ⊜" shown on the terminal certifies that the terminal meets technical regulations for specified radio equipment that are based on the Radio Law and also certifies a technical standards conformity for terminal equipment that are based on the Telecommunications Business Act. To check the certificate, from the Home screen, tap 🔢 and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Legal information]▶[Certificates].
    If you remove the screws and alter the inside of the terminal, the technical regulations conformity certification becomes invalid.
    Do not use the terminal with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law and Telecommunications Business Act.

- Be careful when using the terminal while driving.

  Using a handheld mobile phone while driving will result in a penalty.
  However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.

- Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.

  FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards. If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

- Do not alter the basic software illegally.

  It is regarded as the software modification and Repairs may be refused.

Waterproofness/ Dustproofness

SO-04E provides waterproofness property of IPX5[1], IPX8[2] and dustproofness property of IP5X[3] with microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and back cover firmly attached.

[1] IPX5 means that a phone keeps functioning after applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min. from every direction from a distance of approximately 3 m for at least 3 minutes using water nozzle in 6.3 mm inner diameter.

[2] IPX8 means that a phone keeps functioning after SO-04E is slowly submerged to depth of 1.5m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for approximately 30 minutes and then taken out.

[3] IP5X means a degree of protection that a communication device will securely maintain its operability even after it has been placed in an apparatus with grit and dust of diameters of 75 µm or less and shaken for 8 hours.

What you can do with waterproofness/dustproofness of SO-04E

- You can talk or watch 1Seg program without an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).
  - Do not open or close microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover or back cover when your hands are wet or waterdrops are attached to the terminal.
- You can wash the terminal when it gets dirt or stained with liquid other than tap water.
  - Wash the terminal with tap water at normal temperature (5℃-35℃) by weaker water flow (less than 6 L/min.) at distance of approximately 10 cm away from the tap or shower.
  - When washing the terminal, hold the microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and back cover so as not to open, and wash the terminal with your hands, not using brush or sponge. After washing, drain the terminal before use (P.27).
- You can use at a poolside. Do not throw water from the pool on the terminal, or soak it in pool water.

To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness

To avoid water ingress, be sure to observe the following points.
- Do not throw any liquid other than room temperature tap water on the terminal, or soak it in such liquid.
- Firmly close the microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and back cover. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to enter.
- Do not poke the microphone, earpiece, speaker, flash/photo light/second microphone or strap hole with a sharp object.
- Do not let the terminal fall. It may become scratched causing the waterproof/dustproof performance to degrade.
- The rubber gaskets of the inner side of the microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and back cover play important roles for keeping waterproof/dustproof performance. Do not remove or damage them. Also, prevent dust from adhering to them.

■ Opening the headset jack cover and microUSB jack cover
Open the covers with your fingertip by the grooves.
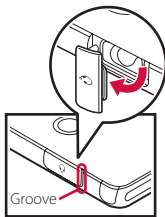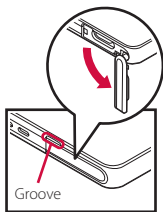
Headset jack cover   **microUSB jack cover**

■ Closing the headset jack cover and microUSB jack cover
Press the covers in the directions of the arrows and ensure there are no gaps.
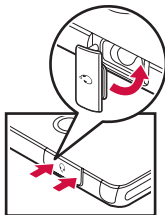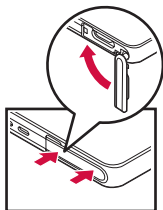
Headset jack cover   **microUSB jack cover**

■ Removing back cover

1 **Insert the tip of your finger into the groove at the bottom of the terminal, and lift up the back cover in the direction of the arrow (❶).**

Back cover

Groove
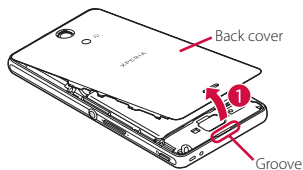
■ Attaching back cover

1 **Check the orientation of back cover, and attach it to the terminal by pressing the back cover as shown by arrow (❶) then (❷) to fit, and press the ○ part firmly to check that no gap exists between the terminal and the back cover (❸).**

　• Be careful not to hook the projection part on the edge of the back cover with finger when attaching the back cover.
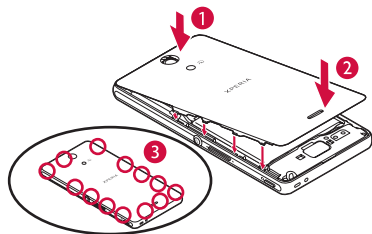
It is recommended to replace the parts for maintaining waterproof/dustproof property once every two years regardless of whether any abnormality is present. DOCOMO replaces the parts as a chargeable service. Bring the terminal to a sales outlet such as a DOCOMO-specified repair office.

Important precautions

Do not perform actions shown in the illustrations below.

<Example>

Using Soap/Detergent/Bath powder

Washing with brush/sponge

Machine-washing

Applying strong water flow

Soaking in ocean water

Using in hot spring

Attaching sand/mud

Observe the following precautions to use the terminal properly.

- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof.
- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (water flow of 6L/min. or more : e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower). SO-04E provides IPX5 waterproofness, but doing so may cause malfunction.
- If the terminal gets wet with salt water, sea water, refreshing beverage or mud or sand adhered, wash it immediately. If they dry out, it is hard to remove the dirt and it may cause damage or malfunction.

- Do not put the terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Do not move the terminal in water or slam the terminal against the surface of water.
- If you put the terminal in tap water, be sure to have it within 30 minutes.
- When you use the terminal in swimming pool, obey rules of the facility.
- The terminal does not float on water.
- Do not leave water on the terminal. In cold region, the terminal freezes up and may cause malfunction.
- Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece, speaker, flash/photo light/second microphone or strap hole. Such water may interfere with talking.
- If the terminal gets splashed with water or other liquid while microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover, or back cover is opened, the liquid may get inside the terminal causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using the terminal, turn off the power and contact a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- If some or one of the rubber gaskets of the inner side of the microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover or back cover are damaged or deformed, have them replaced at DOCOMO-specified repair office.

DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

Draining water from the terminal

When the terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water in the following steps.

① Hold the terminal firmly and wipe off moisture on the terminal surface and back side with dry, clean cloth etc.

② Shake the terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding it, until there is no more water splattering.

③ Swing the terminal in about 10 times against dry, clean cloth etc. to wipe off water remaining in the microphone, earpiece, speaker, power key, volume key, camera key, contacts for the desktop holder, each cover (microUSB jack cover/headset jack cover/back cover), etc.
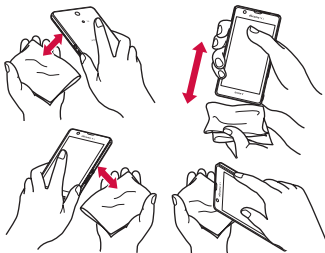
④ Wipe off water drained from the terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.
   - Wipe off water drained from the terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.
   - Do not wipe off water remaining in gaps directly with a cotton swab etc.
   - Let the terminal, with the back cover of the terminal facing up, dry naturally for about 3 hours at room temperature.

Back cover

Charging

Check the following before and after charging.
- Check if the terminal is not wet. Never charge the battery when the terminal is wet.
- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof.
- When charging the battery when or after the terminal is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with a dry, clean cloth etc., before connecting the supplied desktop holder or opening the microUSB jack cover.
- When the microUSB jack cover is opened for charging, close the cover firmly after charging. It is recommended to use the desktop holder for charging to prevent water or dust from seeping inside through the microUSB jack.
- Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, shower room, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. Doing so may cause fire or electric shock.
- Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. Doing so may cause electric shock.

Part names and functions
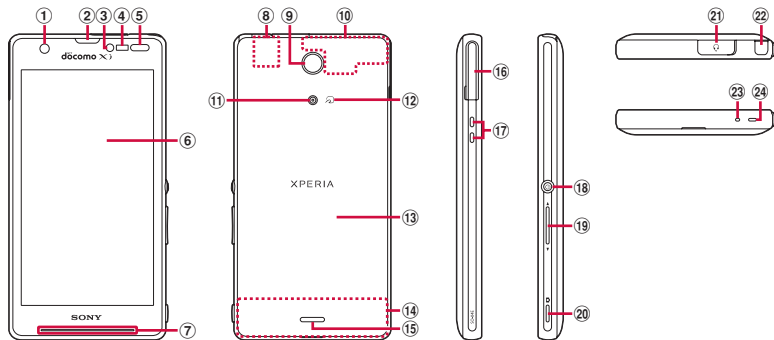
a Front camera lens
b Earpiece
c Light sensor : Use for auto controlling of the screen brightness.
d Proximity sensor : Turns on or off the touch screen to prevent misoperation during a call.
e Infrared data port
f Touch screen
g Notification LED
h GPS antenna section*1
i Camera lens
j FOMA/Xi/Wi-Fi/Bluetooth antenna section*1
k Flash/Photo light/Second microphone*2*3
l 🔊 mark
m Back cover*4
n FOMA/Xi antenna section*1
o Speaker

p microUSB jack : Use for charging or connecting MHL.
q Contacts for Desktop holder
r Power key/Screen lock key
s Volume key/Zoom key
t Camera key
u Headset jack
v Mobacas/1Seg antenna
w Microphone
x Strap hole*5

*1 The antenna is built into the main body. Covering around the antenna with your hand may affect the quality of communications.
*2 Second microphone audio stop is common. It reduces noise to make easy to listen.

*3 Do not remove the black seal around Flash/Photo light/Second microphone inside the terminal. If the seal is removed, acoustic feature cannot be maintained.

*4 Do not remove the silver seal on the reverse side of the back cover. If the seal is removed, reading/writing IC card may not be available. Also, do not remove the net sheet on reverse side of the back cover.

*5 To attach a strap, remove the back cover, pass the strap through the strap hole to put on the back of the hook, then attach the back cover and make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover. To maintain waterproofness/dustproofness, confirm that the strap is not caught in the back cover.

Hook　　Strap hole　　Strap
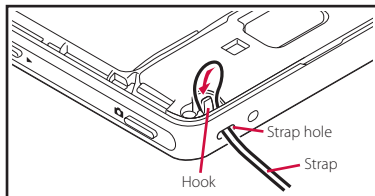
❖**Note**
- Do not put stickers etc. on each sensors.

docomo mini UIM card

The docomo mini UIM card is an IC card recorded user information such as your phone number etc.

- You can use the terminal with docomo mini UIM card. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace.
- When docomo mini UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, making calls, packet communication, etc. are not available.
- For details on docomo mini UIM card, refer to the docomo mini UIM card manual.
- When inserting/removing the docomo mini UIM card, make sure to power off the terminal (P.38). Do not attach an AC adapter.
- For removing/attaching the back cover, see "To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness" (P.24, P.25).

■ Security codes of the docomo mini UIM card

There is a security code called PIN code in the docomo mini UIM card. The code is set to "0000" at subscription, which you can change by yourself (P.219).

❖**Information**
- Please be careful not to touch or scratch a metal part (IC) when you handle the docomo mini UIM card. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.

Inserting docomo mini UIM card

1 **Hook the groove on the bottom of the terminal with your fingertip and lift up the back cover to remove.**

2 **Remove the battery pack and hook the projection part of the tray (❶) with your fingertip to pull out straight, insert docomo mini UIM card into the tray with the metal (IC) part facing down, then press the tray straight to the end.**
   • Be careful about the orientation of the corner cut.
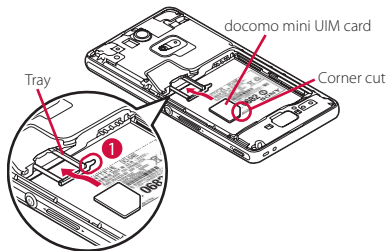
docomo mini UIM card

Tray

Corner cut

3 **Install the battery pack and attach the back cover, then make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover.**

Removing docomo mini UIM card

1 **Hook the groove on the bottom of the terminal with your fingertip and lift up the back cover to remove.**

2 **Remove the battery pack, hook the projection part of the tray (❶) with your fingertip, pull out the tray straight and remove the docomo mini UIM card.**

docomo mini UIM card
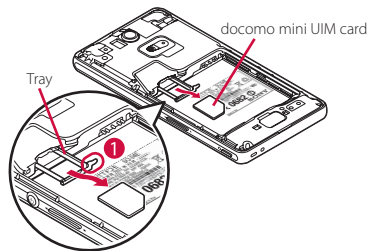
Tray

3 **Press the tray straight to the end, install the battery pack and attach the back cover, then make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover.**

Battery pack

- When installing/removing the battery pack, make sure to power off the terminal (P.38). Do not attach an AC adapter.
- For removing/attaching the back cover, see "To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness" (P.24, P.25).

Installing the battery pack

1 **Hook the groove on the bottom of the terminal with your fingertip and lift up the back cover to remove.**

2 **Check position of charging contacts of the battery pack and insert the battery pack in the direction of arrow mark (❶) aligning the tabs of the terminal with the ones of the battery pack.**
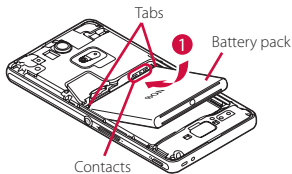
Tabs

Battery pack

Contacts

3 **Attach the back cover and make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover.**

Removing battery pack

1 **Hook the groove on the bottom of the terminal with your fingertip and lift up the back cover to remove.**

2 **From the groove on the terminal, hook the battery pack with your fingertip, and lift up the battery pack in the direction of arrow mark (❶) to remove.**
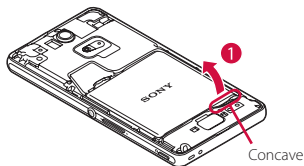
Concave

3 **Attach the back cover and make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover.**

Charging

The battery pack is not fully charged by default.
- For details on estimate of charging time, see "Main specification" (P.274).

Operation time on full charge (estimate)

The following time varies by the battery pack condition or operating environment. For details, see "Main specification" (P.276).

Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 420 hours (stationary)
	GSM	Approx. 360 hours (stationary)
	LTE	Approx. 390 hours (stationary)
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 630 min.
	GSM	Approx. 570 min.

Life of battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable accessory. The usage duration of the battery per one charge decreases gradually each time the battery is recharged.
- When the usage duration per one charge becomes about half of a new battery, the life of the battery pack is assumed to be almost over. The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.

♻
Li-ion 00

- Watching 1Seg etc. for a long time while charging may shorten the lifetime of the battery pack.

Charging

- Be sure to install Battery Pack SO09 dedicated to SO-04E for charging.
- It is recommended to use the AC Adapter 04 (optional) for charging. For details on AC Adapter 04 (optional), see AC Adapter 04 (optional) manual.

- The AC Adapter 04 (optional) is compatible with AC 100 V to 240 V. For using the terminal overseas, a plug adapter that fits the electrical outlets in the country you stay is needed. Do not use an electrical transformer for overseas use to charge the terminal.
- Use a compatible AC adapter or microUSB cable for charging (P.258). If you use a charger other than the compatible one, charging may not be available or operations may not be performed correctly.
- Insert and remove the AC adapter cable or microUSB cable slowly and evenly so that excessive force is not applied.
- If remaining battery level is low for activating the terminal when turning on the power, the notification LED flashes in red three times by pressing ⓞ.
- When you start charging, notification LED on the terminal turns red/orange/green, and green light indicates that the battery level has reached 90 % or more. To check the battery level, see the status bar at the top of the screen or from the Home screen, tap 🔡 and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Status] to see "Battery level". When the battery level has reached 100 %, battery level is displayed as "100%" on the status bar or in "Battery level", and "Charged." appears on the unlock screen (P.38).

- When the battery level is 19% or less, "Connect your charger" appears on the unlock screen. When the battery level is 14% or less, "Connect charger" appears in a pop-up window. Tap [Battery info] in the pop-up window to set Power Saver or check battery information (P.211).
- When you start charging with the terminal powered off, the power turns on. However, you cannot operate the terminal. Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital for this reason.

Charging with Desktop Holder

When using supplied Desktop Holder SO17 and AC Adapter 04 (optional) for charging, do the following procedures.

1   **Insert a microUSB plug of the AC adapter into the charging jack on the back side of the desktop holder with the USB symbol (B) side facing up (❶).**

2   **Unfold the power plug of the AC adapter and insert it into an outlet.**

3 **Insert the terminal into the desktop holder.**
- Notification LED lights on the terminal. For the notification LED for charging, see "Notification LED" (P.43).

4 **When charging is complete, holding the desktop holder, lift the terminal up to remove.**

5 **Remove the power plug of the AC adapter from the power outlet.**

6 **Remove the microUSB plug of the AC adapter from the desktop holder.**

❖**Note**
- You cannot charge the battery by connecting the desktop holder to a PC.
- Check the connecting direction to connect correctly. Wrong connection may cause damage.

AC adapter

Notification LED

Charging jack

Desktop holder

microUSB plug
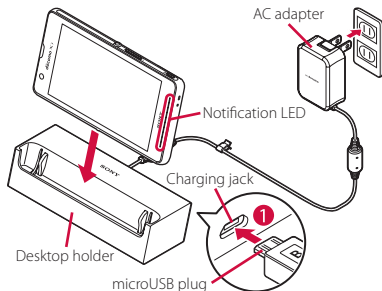
Charging with AC adapter

When using AC Adapter 04 (optional) for charging, do the following procedures.
- For opening/closing microUSB jack cover, see "To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness" (P.24, P.25).

1 **Hook the groove on the microUSB jack cover of the terminal with your fingertip to open the cover and insert the microUSB plug of the AC adapter into the microUSB jack of the terminal straight with the symbol side (B) facing up.**

2 **Unfold the power plug of the AC adapter and insert it into an outlet.**
- Notification LED lights on the terminal. For notification LED for charging, see "Notification LED" (P.43).

3 **When charging is complete, remove the power plug of the AC adapter from the power outlet.**

4 **Remove the microUSB plug of the AC adapter evenly from the terminal.**

5 **Close the microUSB jack cover, firmly press it and make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and cover.**

❖**Note**
- Check the connecting direction to connect correctly. Wrong connection may cause damage.

Notification LED

Groove

microUSB plug
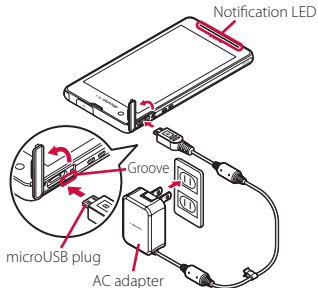
AC adapter

Charging with DC adapter

DC Adapter 03 (optional) supplies power from a car cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V). For details, refer to the DC Adapter 03 (optional) manual.

Charging with a PC

When using Micro USB Cable 01 (optional) for charging, do the following procedures.
- For opening/closing microUSB jack cover, see "To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness" (P.24, P.25).

1 Hook the groove on the microUSB jack cover of the terminal to open the cover and insert the microUSB plug of the microUSB cable straight into the microUSB jack of the terminal, with the symbol side ( ) facing up.

2 Insert the USB plug of the microUSB cable into a USB port of a PC.
- Notification LED lights on the terminal. For the notification LED for charging, see "Notification LED" (P.43).
- When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Skip].
- When a screen for new hardware detection etc. appears on the PC, select "キャンセル (Cancel)".

3 When the charging is complete, remove the USB plug of the microUSB cable from the USB port of the PC.

4 **Remove the microUSB plug of the microUSB cable evenly from the terminal.**

5 **Close the microUSB jack cover, firmly press it and make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and cover.**

❖**Note**
- Installation of an MTP driver to a PC is required when charging the battery with a Microsoft Windows XP PC, because "USB connection mode" (P.243) is set to "Media transfer mode (MTP)" by default. Install Windows Media Player 10 or later to install an MTP driver.
- Check the connecting direction to connect correctly. Wrong connection may cause damage.

Notification LED

Groove

microUSB plug

microUSB cable

USB plug
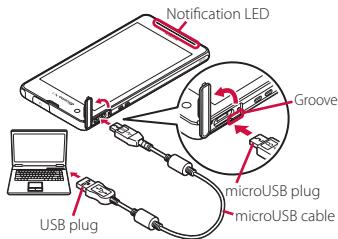
Turning power on/off

Turning power on

1 **Press and hold 🔘 for over a second.**
- The terminal vibrates and unlock screen appears after a while.
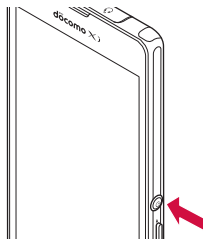
2 **Unlock the screen.**
- For unlocking the screen by default, see "Unlocking the screen" (P.38).

❖**Information**
- For the first time you turn on the terminal, flick (swipe) up/down the screen to unlock the screen and make initial settings. For the initial settings, see "Initial settings" (P.39).

- If you have activated the screen lock (P.219) or SIM card lock (P.218), unlock screen/PIN code entry screen appears when turning power on. For unlocking the screen lock, see "Unlocking the screen lock" (P.220), and for PIN code entry, see "Entering the PIN code when powered on" (P.218).

Turning power off

1 **Press and hold ⊙ for over a second.**

2 **Tap [Power off].**

3 **Tap [OK].**

❖**Information**
- Press ⊙ for over a second and then touch and hold [Power off] and tap [OK] to restart the terminal in safe mode. For safe mode, see "The terminal operation is unstable." (P.260).

Setting screen lock

When the screen lock is set, the screen backlight turns off. You can avoid the touch screen or key from false operations.
- The screen is locked with turning the screen backlight off after the specified time duration.

1 **Press ⊙.**

❖**Information**
- For setting time after the backlight turns off until the screen lock activates, see "Adjusting the idle time before the screen turns off" (P.209).

Unlocking the screen

Unlock screen appears when turning the power on or the backlight on by pressing ⊙.

1 **On the unlock screen, tap 🔒.**

❖**Information**
- On the unlock screen, tap 📷 to activate the camera. Tap 🔵 to activate "しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier)" or "Google" application.
- For setting a method to cancel the screen lock, see "Setting screen unlock method" (P.219), and for changing the method, see "Changing screen unlock method" (P.220).
- The screen lock can be disabled. For details, see "Canceling screen lock" (P.221).
- When "Preferred applications" is set to "Xperia™ applications", or "Set all to" or "Lock screen" is set to "Xperia™" in Preferred apps settings, flick the screen up or down (swipe) to cancel the screen lock. For the initial settings, see "Initial settings" (P.39) and for Preferred apps settings, see "Setting preferred apps" (P.215).

Initial settings

For the first time you turn on the terminal, flick (swipe) up/down the screen to unlock the screen and follow the onscreen instructions to make initial settings.

1 Select [English (United States)]▶ Tap [Done], and tap →.
- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions to make the following settings, and tap → or [Finish].
  - Connect to a Wi-Fi network
  - Connecting to Sony Entertainment Network
  - Set accounts and auto-sync
  - Select preferred applications

2 Tap [OK].

3 Tap ⇥ when initial setting screen for docomo service appears.
- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions to set up below, and tap ⇥.
  - Select whether to install all apps now or later
  - Select whether to set Osaifu-Keitai settings
  - Set docomo apps password settings
  - Set whether to respond when receive a request of location search

4 Tap [OK].
- Instruction guide for the Home screen appears. Tap [Do not show this again]/ [OK] to display the Home screen.

❖**Information**
- To change the language later, from the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input]▶[Language]. To set functions, from the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Settings]▶[Setup guide]/ [docomo service].
- Make sure that the data connection is available (LTE/ 3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi network is connected before setting up online services. For checking the connection status, see "Status icon" (P.44).
- You can use the terminal without creating your Google account, however the services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc. are not available.

Basic operations

Basic key icon operation

	Back	Go back to the previous screen. Or close a dialog box, an option menu, the Notification panel, etc.
	Home	Go to the Home screen. Touch and hold the icon and drag to to activate "しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier)" or "Google" application.
	Recently used apps	Display recently used applications in thumbnail list to activate or delete an application from the list (P.57). Also, use or set small apps (P.57).

* In this manual, each key icon operation is described with , , .

Using the touch screen

Precautions on using touch screen

- Touch screen is designed for being touched lightly with fingers. Do not push it forcibly with a finger or press it with sharp objects (nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.).
- Touching the touch screen may not work in the following cases. Note that it may cause malfunction.
  - Operation with gloved hands
  - Operation with tip of fingernail
  - Operation with foreign object on the screen
  - Operation with protective sheet or seal on the screen
  - Operation on the wet touch panel
  - Operation with fingers wet with sweat or water

Operations on the touch screen

■ Tap

Touch an item such as icon or menu with your finger lightly and release it.
- Double-tap means tapping twice quickly.

■ Touch and hold

Touch and hold an icon or menu item long.

■ Flick (Swipe)

Touch the screen and flick up/down/left/right.

■ Drag
Touch the screen, drag to the desired position and release the finger.

■ Scroll
When whole content cannot be displayed, flick up/down/left/right displayed content to scroll (move) the display position.

■ Pinch
Touch the screen with two fingers and widen (pinch-out) or narrow (pinch-in) the fingers' distance. On some screens, pinch-out to zoom in and pinch-in to zoom out.
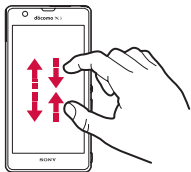
Switching portrait or landscape view automatically

You can set the screen orientation to switch between landscape and portrait view automatically according to the terminal orientation.

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap [Auto rotate].
- When the setting is enabled, 🔄 appears.

❖**Information**
- To switch the screen automatically between landscape and portrait screen, from the Home screen, tap ⬚, then tap [Settings]▶[Display] and mark "Auto-rotate screen", or from the Home screen, tap ⬚, then tap [Settings]▶[Accessibility] and mark "Auto-rotate screen".
- Even when you change the orientation of the terminal, the screen may not change to landscape view depending on the screen such as Home screen, etc.
- Changing orientation of the terminal in nearly horizontal state against the ground does not switch to portrait view/landscape view automatically.

Setting silent mode

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap [Sound].
   - Tap 🔔 to activate silent mode (vibration) and tap 🔕 to activate silent mode (mute). Tap ✖ to cancel silent mode.

❖**Information**
- Press and hold ⓞ for over a second and then tap ✖ / 🔕 / 🔔 in the pop-up screen to switch Mute (Ringtone 0)/Vibrate/Off (disabling silent mode).
- From the Home screen etc., press and hold lower part of ◁▷ to set vibrator. While vibration is on, press ◁▷ to set to Mute (Ringtone 0). On the unlock screen, during a call, or while the camera, WALKMAN, Media Player, etc. is activated, pressing and holding lower part of ◁▷ does not set silent mode.
- Setting the terminal to silent mode does not mute sounds for shutter, playback of video or music, alarm, dialpad operation sound during a call or when [End call] is tapped, etc. Note that adjusting volume in Volumes ("Ringtone & notifications" (P.206)) or turning the volume up by pressing upper part of ◁▷ cancels silent mode.

Capturing screenshot

You can save the current displayed screen as an image (screenshot).

1 On the screen you want to capture, press and hold ⓞ and lower part of ◁▷ for over a second at the same time.
   - Screenshot is captured and 🖼 appears in the status bar.

❖**Information**
- You can also capture a screenshot by pressing and holding ⓞ for over a second and then tapping [Take screenshot].
- Drag the status bar downwards and tap [Screenshot captured.] on the Notification panel to check captured images in the "Album" application. Tap [Share] to attach captured images to an application to send or to share them. "Share" may not appear depending on notification status on the Notification panel, but it appears when pinching out on the Notification panel.

Marking/Unmarking to switch setting

When a checkbox/radio button is displayed besides a setting item, mark or unmark a checkbox/radio button to switch on/off for the setting.

☑ / ■	Switch on/off the setting for a checkbox.
● / ○	Switch on/off the setting for a radio button.
🔵① / ⓪	Tap or drag left or right to switch on/off the setting.

Notification LED

Notification LED provides information on the terminal status, incoming calls, mail reception, etc.

Status	Indication
Red	Indicate that the battery level is 14% or less while the battery is being charged
Orange	Indicate that the battery level is 15% - 89% while the battery is being charged
Green	Indicate that the battery level is 90% or more while the battery is being charged
Flashing red	The remaining battery level is 14% or less
Flashing pale purple	Indicate missed call, new messages (SMS), new Gmail or new email exist[*]

* The notification LED flashes when the unlock screen is displayed, backlight is turned off or unlock preference is set to None.

❖**Information**
- If remaining battery level is low for activating the terminal when turning on the power, the notification LED flashes in red three times by pressing ⓞ.
- When charging starts with the power off, notification LED lights red and when the battery level is displayed on the screen, notification LED lights in the color corresponding to the battery level.

- While using "Album" application or "WALKMAN" application, the notification LED lights according to the content. While receiving a call, it blinks according to the color of "Themes" (P.208) in Display settings.

Status bar

A status bar appears at the top of the screen. In the status bar, the terminal status and notification are displayed. Notification icons appear on the left side, and status icons appear on the right side of the status bar.

Status bar

Status icon

The main status icons displayed on the status bar are as follows.

📶	Signal strength
📶	International roaming available
📶	International roaming connected
📶	Out of service
📶	HSDPA available
📶	Communicating in HSDPA
📶	3G (packet) available
📶	Communicating in 3G (packet)
📶	LTE available

📶	Communicating in LTE
📶	Connecting to Wi-Fi
📶	Communicating in Wi-Fi
📶	Connecting to Wi-Fi using Auto IP function
📶	Bluetooth function ON
📶	Connecting to Bluetooth device
✈	Airplane mode activated
📳	Silent mode (vibration) ON
🔇	Silent mode (mute) ON
🔊	Speaker phone turned on[*]
🔇	Microphone set to mute[*]
⏰	Alarm is set
N	NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function ON
🔋	Battery status
🔋	The battery is charging
🔋	Battery is low (4% or less)
🔋	PUK code locked or docomo mini UIM card not inserted

* Appears when switched to the Home screen etc.

Notification icon

The main notification icons displayed on the status bar are as follows.

![icon]	New email message
![icon]	New Gmail message
![icon]	New message (SMS)
![icon]	Problem with message (SMS) delivery
![icon]	New instant message
![icon]	New Area Mail
![icon]	Screenshot captured
![icon]	New Facebook message
![icon]	Uploading data to Facebook
![icon]	Uploading data to Facebook completed
![icon]	Facebook setting request notification
![icon]	Receiving/Downloading data
![icon]	Sending/Uploading data
![icon]	Notification of data reception etc. via Bluetooth communication
![icon]	Unmount microSD card (reading/writing unavailable)
![icon]	Preparing microSD card
![icon]	Update notification/Installation complete (available update application exist in Google Play/application installation is complete)
![icon]	Application update notification
![icon]	Downloading application update and installing
![icon]	Installation of application update completed
![icon]	Software update notification
![icon]	Downloading software update completed

![icon]	Installation of software update completed
![icon]	Software update interrupted, stopped
![icon]	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set to the terminal and docomo mini UIM card
![icon]	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set to the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
![icon]	Omakase Lock set to the terminal and docomo mini UIM card
![icon]	Omakase Lock set to the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
![icon]	Receiving/Making a call*, during a call*
![icon]	Call on hold*
![icon]	Missed call
![icon]	New voice mail
![icon]	Upcoming calendar event
![icon]	Stopwatch is running
![icon]	Timer in use
![icon]	Alarm sounding
![icon]	Playing a track with Media Player
![icon]	Playing a track with WALKMAN
![icon]	Receiving Mobacas
![icon]	Watching 1Seg*
![icon]	Recording 1Seg*
![icon]	FM radio in use*
![icon]	USB connected
![icon]	MHL connected
![icon]	Available to activate TV launcher
![icon]	Screen mirroring connected
![icon]	Communicating via Infrared
![icon]	Mobile data communication invalid

	Wi-Fi open network available
	Connecting to a VPN
	The terminal set as media server/Connection request notification received
	Error message
	Warning message
	Problem with sync
	Setup guide unchecked
	Some notifications are hidden
	Notification such as personal area received
	Wi-Fi tethering ON
	Setting USB tethering
	Setting Wi-Fi tethering and USB tethering
	Positioning with GPS
	AUTO-GPS is set
	Green Heart energy saving icon (remove the AC adapter from the power outlet)
	Setting Omakase Lock
	Available memory on the terminal is low
	Notification of data transfer to microSD card exists (available internal storage decrease)

* Appears when switched to the Home screen etc.

Notification panel

When notification icons appear on the status bar, you can open the Notification panel to check the notifications, activate corresponding application, etc. You can open the Notification panel to set silent mode, enable/disable Wi-Fi function, etc.

Opening/Closing the Notification panel

1 Drag the status bar downwards.
  • Tap to close the Notification panel.

Quick settings

Notification panel
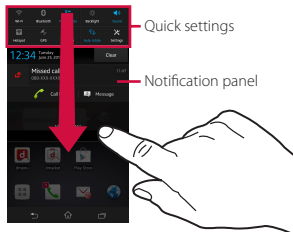
❖**Information**
• When screen unlock method (P.219) is set to "Swipe/Touch", you can open the Notification panel without canceling screen lock by dragging the status bar downwards.

- On the Notification panel, number of unread mails, missed calls, and name of callers can be checked. Depending on the notification status and application on the Notification panel, sender, subject, part of message of unread mail can be checked.
- You can zoom in/out the Notification panel for some notifications by pinching (P.41) on the Notification panel.
- Touch and hold a notification on the Notification panel, then tap [App info] to check the application information.
- You can open the Notification panel to set ON/OFF etc. of function with the quick setting tool. For changing order or number of the quick setting tool displayed in the Notification panel, see "Editing quick settings on the Notification panel" (P.209).

🛜 / 🛜 Wi-Fi	Enable/disable Wi-Fi function.
🔵 / 🔵 Bluetooth	Enable/disable Bluetooth function.
📶 / 📶 Mobile data	Enable/disable mobile data communication.
🔅 / 🔅 Backlight	Switch screen brightness.
🔊 / 🔇 / ✕ Sound	Enable/disable silent mode (Vibration/mute).
🛜 / 🛜 Hotspot	Enable/disable Wi-Fi tethering function.
📍 / 📍 GPS	Enable/disable GPS function.
✈ / ✈ Airplane	Enable/disable Airplane mode.

🔄 / 🔄 Auto-rotate	Set whether to switch portrait/landscape view automatically according to the terminal orientation.
🔧 Settings	Display Settings menu (P.194).

Clearing contents on the Notification panel

1 Open the Notification panel and tap [Clear].

❖**Information**
- Flick left or right a notification on the Notification panel to delete from the list.
- Some notifications may not be cleared.

Home screen

You can switch the Home screen of the terminal to "docomo" or "Xperia™".

- For "docomo" home screen, see "Home screen" (P.85).
- For changing home application, see "Switching Home application" (P.58).

Xperia™ home screen

It appears when the home application is set to "Xperia™".

ⓐ Current home screen position
  - Flick the home screen left or right to switch.
ⓑ Widget : Google Search
ⓒ Widget : Clock
ⓓ Wallpaper
ⓔ Shortcuts (applications)
ⓕ Media folder (Camera, 1Seg, FM radio, Osaifu-Keitai)
ⓖ Application button

❖**Information**
- To change the initial home screen for operations, switch the home screen you want to change to, touch and hold the area of the screen where no icons are displayed, then tap ![].

Adding a home screen

Up to 7 home screens can be displayed.

1 Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.
  - Alternatively, pinch-in on the Home screen.

2 Flick the Home screen left or right and tap ![].

❖**Information**
- To return to the Home screen, tap ⌂ or ↰, or tap any home screen.
- To delete a home screen, touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap ✕. When you added shortcuts, widgets, etc. to the home screen, tap ✕ and tap [Delete].

Adding a widget to the Home screen

Widget is an application which can be added to the Home screen to use. Use a widget and start an application easily.

1 **Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.**
   • Alternatively, pinch-in on the Home screen.

2 **Tap [WIDGETS] and select a widget to add.**
   • When a settings screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
• To return to the Home screen, tap 🏠 or 🔙, or tap any home screen.
• For some widgets, displaying size can be changed. To change displaying size, touch and hold a widget, then drag the blue frame.
• To delete a widget, from the Home screen, touch and hold a widget to delete and drag it to 🗑 displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Adding a shortcut to the Home screen

You can add shortcuts of application, bookmark, etc.

1 **Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.**

   • Alternatively, pinch-in on the Home screen.

2 **Tap [APPS].**

3 **[Shortcuts] or select an application you want to add.**
   • When you select "Shortcuts", select from the stored shortcuts.
   • When a data selection screen or setting screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
• To return to the Home screen, tap 🏠 or 🔙, or tap any home screen.
• To delete a shortcut, touch and hold a shortcut to delete on the Home screen, drag it to 🗑 displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Adding a folder to the Home screen

You can put applications, shortcuts, etc. added to the Home screen into a folder to manage them.

1 **From the Home screen, touch and hold an icon, then drag it over the other icon.**
   • A new folder creation screen appears.

2 **Enter a folder name, then tap [Done].**

❖**Information**
- To move an icon to a folder, on the Home screen, touch and hold an icon you want to move, drag it over a folder.
- To change a folder name, tap a folder, tap the folder name and enter a folder name, then tap [Done].
- To delete a folder, on the Home screen, touch and hold an icon to delete and drag it to 🗑 displayed at the bottom of the screen, then tap [Delete]. Applications, shortcuts, etc. in the folder are also deleted.

Changing wallpaper

You can change wallpaper of the Home screen.

1 Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.
- Alternatively, pinch-in on the Home screen.

2 Tap [WALLPAPERS].

3 Tap [Album]/[Live Wallpapers].
- When you tap [Album], select an image and set range of the image by dragging or pinching to adjust the cropping frame, and then tap [Crop] to set wallpaper.
- When you tap [Live Wallpapers], select a content and tap [Set wallpaper].

- Images displayed at the right of "Album" or "Live Wallpapers" are wallpapers of Xperia™. Select an image to set.

❖**Information**
- To return to the Home screen, tap ⌂ or ⤺, or tap any home screen.

Changing theme

You can change image theme for the Home screen, unlock screen, etc.

1 Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.
- Alternatively, pinch-in on the Home screen.

2 Tap [THEMES].

3 Flick it left or right to select any image.

❖**Information**
- To return to the Home screen, tap ⌂ or ⤺, or tap any home screen.

Application screen

Application screen when the Home screen (P.48) is set to "Xperia™" is explained here.

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦ (Application button).
   • The Application screen appears.
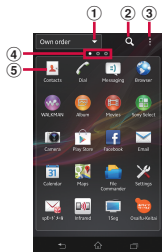
①**▼** (Sort)
   • To sort application icons displayed in the Application screen, set "Own order" and touch and hold an application icon, then drag it to any position.
②**◙** (Search)
   • Search for an application in the terminal.
③Optional menu icon
   • "Uninstall" (P.55), "Share" (P.56) or "Customize" can be operated. To customize the Home screen such as changing the wallpaper, tap [Customize].
④Current displayed position of the application screen
   • Flick the Application screen left or right to switch.

⑤Application icon
   • Some application icons are displayed with a number of missed calls, unread mails, etc.

❖**Information**
• To add an application screen, while sorting application icons, drag to the right-end of the application screen.

Application list

Applications displayed on the Application screen are as follows.
• For usage of some applications, separate subscription (Charged) is required.

▤ Contacts
Activate Xperia™ phonebook application to manage contacts of your friends or colleagues.
▰ Dial
Activate Xperia™ phone application to make/receive calls, and switch between calls.
▣ Messaging
Send and receive messages (SMS). →P.114
▣ Browser
Browse website and WAP sites (except for WML) and download files. →P.127
▰ WALKMAN
Playback music data stored on the internal storage or microSD card.
▣ Album
View photos and videos you took, and images posted on Picasa or Facebook. →P.174

Movies

Play downloaded contents with Video Unlimited or videos that are transferred from a PC to the terminal. On the terminal, you can play videos of a DLNA device or programs that are recorded with a Blu-ray Disc recorder after transferring to the terminal by TV transfer.

Sony Select

Connect Sony Select to obtain applications, games, etc.

Camera

Take photos and record video clips. → P.152

Play Store

Access to the Google Play, download and buy new applications. → P.133

Facebook

Activate Facebook client application. → P.224

Email

Send and receive emails (multiple accounts are available). → P.118

Calendar

Display a calendar and manage schedule. → P.186

Maps

Use Google map services, such as viewing current location, finding another location and calculating routes. → P.183

File Commander

You can easily find still pictures, videos, music data, downloaded files, etc.

Settings

Make the terminal settings. → P.194

spモードメール (sp-mode mail)

Send/receive mails using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo.ne.jp). You can use pictogram and Deco-mail. It supports auto-reception. → P.114

Infrared

An application which allows you to send and receive phonebook data etc. via infrared communication. → P.233

1Seg

Watch 1Seg program. → P.144

Osaifu-Keitai

Use Osaifu-Keitai. → P.134

Sony Entertainment folder

In the folder, "Let's start PSM", "Music Unlimited", "Video Unlimited", "電子書籍 Reader by Sony (e-Book Reader by Sony)" and "PlayMemories Online" applications are stored.

Socialife

View/manage SNS such as Facebook, Twitter or favorite news websites etc. collectively. → P.180

Chrome

Connect to the Internet with Google Chrome.

YouTube

Playback videos around the world or upload recorded videos. → P.177

Google

Search information in the terminal and web pages by keywords. → P.58

Voice Search
Use Google Voice Search.
 Google+
Activate SNS client application Google+
provided by Google.
 Messenger
Chat with friends using Google+ instant
messaging.
 Gmail
Send and receive mails from/to a Google
account.→P.124
 Talk
Chat with friends using Google Talk instant
messaging.→P.125
 Navigation
Display Google Maps Navigation to receive
detailed guides for your destination.→P.185
 Local
Use various information registered on Google
Maps, such as shops around the current
location.→P.184
 Play Movies & TV
An application for accessing movie rental
service of Google Play. Select a movie you want
to watch and rent it.
 Play Books
Download new books, bestsellers, etc. from
Google Play Books to read.
 FM radio
Use FM radio.→P.151

 TrackID™
Use a service that checks the information of
playing music.
 Calculator
Perform basic calculations such as addition,
subtraction, multiplication, and division.
 Alarm & clock
Set alarm and view clock.→P.188
 Notes
Create notes or voice notes, and send them to
another terminal to share information. Also,
synchronize with Evernote.
 Instruction Manual
Display the terminal instruction manual. You
can directly start a function you want to use
from the explanation (in Japanese only).
* See "About manuals of SO-04E" in
 "Introduction".
 docomo phonebook
Activate DOCOMO phonebook application to
manage contacts of your friends or colleagues.
→P.104
 Phone
Activate DOCOMO phone application to make/
receive calls, and switch between calls.→P.96
 dmenu
A shortcut application for "dmenu" to find
contents that you used in i-mode and joyful
and convenient contents for smartphones
readily.→P.132

dmarket

An application for activating dmarket. In dmarket, you can buy contents such as music, videos or books. Also, applications on Google Play are introduced.→P.132

 i チャネル (i-channel)

An application for using i-channel.

 i コンシェル (i-concier)

An application for using i-concier. i-concier is a service in which a mobile phone supports your life like a "butler" or "concierge".

 しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier)

Speak "what you want to search" or "what you want to do" to the terminal. It understands your intention and display the best solution on the display from the services or functions of the terminal (in Japanese only).

 フォトコレクション (Photo collection)

Free storage service of photos/videos. They can be automatically categorized by recognized faces or scenes on the cloud.

 Media Player

Play music and videos.→P.178

 NOTTV

Watch Mobacas program. Enjoy programs/contents of broadcasting stations such as "NOTTV" etc.→P.139

 Memo

Create/manage memos. It supports i-concier service.

 Schedule

Create/manage schedule. It supports i-concier service.

 ToruCa

Acquire, display, search, or refresh ToruCa.→P.138

 IC Tag/Barcode Reader

Read IC Tag and barcode.

 iDアプリ (iD application)

Make settings etc. for use of electronic money, iD.→P.138

 ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)

An application for using "ケータイデータお預かりサービス (Data Security Service)", "電話帳バックアップ (Phonebook backup)" or "SDカードバックアップ (SD card backup)". Back up or restore phonebook data etc. For information on docomo backup (save to microSD card), see " ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" (P.191).

 docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection

An application for simply using "docomo Wi-Fi" public wireless LAN service by DOCOMO or home Wi-Fi. Using the widget, you can connect/disconnect to Wi-Fi with a one-touch operation in a Wi-Fi area.

 Disaster kit

An application which helps you to check received Early Warning "Area Mail", make settings (P.126), and record and check messages on the docomo Disaster Message Board.

遠隔サポート (Remote support)

An application for using "スマートフォンあんしん遠隔サポート (Smartphone Anshin Remote Support)". With "スマートフォンあんしん遠隔サポート (Smartphone Anshin Remote Support)", call center staff can provide operational support while checking your terminal screen remotely.

OfficeSuite

View and read Office documents.→P.193

❖**Information**

- The applications displayed on this application screen are pre-installed by default. Some pre-installed applications can be uninstalled. Even if uninstalled, some applications can be downloaded from "Play Store" (P.133) etc. again.
- Some application names may not be displayed fully.
- Some applications require downloading and installation. If you cannot download application, from the Home screen, tap ▦ and tap [Settings]▶[Security]▶[Unknown sources]▶[OK], mark the checkbox and then tap the application.
- Activating two or more applications may increase battery consumption and the operation time may become short. For this reason, it is recommended to end applications when not used. To end an application, on the application screen you are using, tap 🔙 to display the Home screen, or tap ▭ and then [Close all].
- If you selected Japanese as a language in Initial settings (P.39), some group names are displayed in Japanese even after the language setting is changed. These group names can be changed to English (P.93).

Adding an application to the Home screen

1 **From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon you want to add to the Home screen.**

2 **Drag it to "Add to Home screen" displayed at the top of the screen.**
   - A Home screen appears.

3 **Drag it to a position to locate the shortcut.**

❖**Information**

- To delete a shortcut, touch and hold a shortcut to delete on the Home screen, drag it to 🗑 displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Uninstalling an application

- Before uninstalling an application, see "Uninstalling an application" (P.92).

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦.**

2 **Tap ⋮ and tap [Uninstall].**

3 **Tap an icon with ✕.**
   - A confirmation screen appears for uninstall.
   - Icons with ✕ can be deleted.

4 **Tap [Uninstall].**

Sharing application

Introduce an application with simple operation. Send/post an application downloading information (URL) without entering manually.

- Some applications cannot be shared.

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦.

2 Tap ⬚ and [Share].

3 Tap an application icon with ◁.
- A selection screen for sharing method appears.
- An icon with ◁ can be shared.

4 Selecting sharing method.
- Follow the onscreen instructions.

Adding a folder to the Application screen

You can enter application icons displayed on the Application screen to a folder to manage them.

1 On the Application screen, touch and hold an application icon, then drag it over the other icon.
- A new folder creating screen appears.

2 Enter a folder name, then tap [Done].

❖**Information**
- To move an application icon to a folder, on the Application screen, touch and hold an icon you want to move, then drag it over a folder.
- To take out an application icon in a folder from the folder, tap the folder, touch and hold the application icon, then drag it to a place somewhere you want to locate.
- To change a folder name, tap a folder, tap the folder name, enter a folder name, then tap [Done].

Task manager

You can check the recently-used application and end it.

Opening recently-used application window

Display recently used applications in thumbnail list and activate.

1 **Tap** ⊡**.**
 • Thumbnails of recently used applications are listed.

❖**Information**
 • Tap a thumbnail of application to activate.
 • Flick left or right a thumbnail of application displayed to delete from the list.
   Alternatively, touch and hold a thumbnail of application and tap [Delete from list] to delete from the thumbnail list.
 • To end all applications and delete all thumbnail lists, tap [Close all] displayed at the upper left of the screen.
 • To check application information, touch and hold a thumbnail of application and tap [App info].

Small apps

You can use a small app while using another application.

1 **Tap** ⊡**.**
 • The set small apps appear.

2 **Select a small app to use.**
 • The small app activates.

❖**Information**
 • By default, ▦ (Calculator), ◷ (Timer), ▨ (Note), ▧ (Recorder) are set.
 • Tap ✛ and [Play Store] to install a new small app from Play Store and set it. When ✛ is not displayed in the list, flick the small app displayed area left or right.
 • To delete a set small app, touch and hold a small app you want to delete and then drag it out of the small app display area, then tap [Delete] when a deletion confirmation screen appears. To set deleted small app again, tap ✛ and [Installed small apps], then select a small app you want to set.
 • To close a running small app, tap ✕.

Switching Home application

In the terminal, you can switch the Home screen between "docomo" or "Xperia™". "docomo" is set to the home application by default.

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞ and tap [Settings]▶[Setup guide].
   • Tap ➔ 4 times.

2 On the Preferred applications screen, tap [Change now].

3 Tap [Home screen]/[Set all to].
   • When "ALL" is selected, you can set home application, unlock screen, phonebook application and application for playing videos or music as preferred applications all at once.

4 Tap [docomo]/[Xperia™].

5 Tap [OK].

❖**Information**
• Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap ⊞ and [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶Tap [Preferred apps settings], then tap [Set all to]/[Home screen] (P.215).
• When the home application is switched, widgets or shortcuts on the screen may not be displayed correctly depending on home screen layout etc.

Searching information in the terminal and web pages

Enter a word in the search box to browse the information in the terminal or on the Internet.

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Google].
   • The software keyboard appears.

2 Enter a search word.
   • Search suggestions appear as you enter a character. For character entry, see "Character entry" (P.60).
   • To enter a new search word, tap ⌫.

3 Tap a search item or 🔍 of software keyboard.
   • When you select an application from the search result, the application is activated.

❖**Information**
• If a Google account is set, the Google Now screen appears in Step 1 in portrait view. Follow the onscreen instructions.
• Tap 🎤 on the software keyboard to input a search word by voice typing with "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing".

Using Google voice typing

Enter a search word by voice.

1 **From the Home screen, tap [icon] on the Google search widget.**

2 **Speak a search word to the microphone.**
- Search results appear.

Search settings

You can set to use for search box or set search objectives in the terminal.

1 **From the Home screen, tap [icon], then tap [Google].**
- The software keyboard appears. Tap [icon].

2 **Tap [icon] and [Settings].**
- Google search setting screen appears. You can set the following items.

Google Now*	Set location information service to on to check weather information for the current location, traffic information, directions.
Voice	You can change language and settings for voice search.
Phone search	Change the search range by marking/unmarking data categories (Apps, Browser, Chrome, Contacts, docomo phonebook, Email, File Commander, Messaging, OfficeSuite, Play Books, Play Movies & TV, WALKMAN) in the terminal.

Privacy and accounts	Set whether to display search options from Web history when a search word is entered, or delete a search history for contents or applications in the terminal. • You need to create your Google account.

* Appears when a Google account is set.

Character entry

Enter characters using the software keyboard which appears when you tap the character input box in a mail, phonebook, etc.

❖**Information**
- When the software keyboard is displayed, 📱 appears on the status bar.
- To hide software keyboard, tap ✕ displayed at the lower left of the screen.
- Touch and hold a text in the character entry screen to display the enlarged text to check with dragging on the text.

Selecting entry method

In the terminal, you can select Input method (keyboard type) from "Google voice typing", "Moji-Henshu", "Xperia™ Chinese keyboard", "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard" or "Xperia™ keyboard".

Google voice typing	Select to enter characters by voice input with Google voice typing.
Moji-Henshu	Select to enter characters by voice input with docomo voice input.
Xperia™ Chinese keyboard	Select to enter Chinese.
Xperia™ Japanese keyboard	Select to enter Japanese.

Xperia™ keyboard	You can select a language for text entry.

1 From the Home screen, tap 📱, then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [Language & input]▶[Default].

3 Tap [Xperia™ Japanese keyboard]/ [International keyboard].

❖**Information**
- When the language is set to English, the default input method is set to "International keyboard". To use the Japanese keyboard, tap [Xperia™ Japanese keyboard] in Step 3. In this manual, explanations are given only for "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard".
- While entering characters, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Choose input method] to select from "Google voice typing"/"Japanese Moji-Henshu"/ "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard"/"International keyboard".
- "Xperia™ Chinese keyboard" is not available by default. To use Chinese keyboard, from the Home screen, tap 📱, then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input] and mark "Xperia™ Chinese keyboard".

Software keyboard

For Japanese keyboard, there are 5 types of software keyboards: phonepad, QWERTY, Japanese syllabary, Kana handwriting and Kanji handwriting input.

■ Phonepad keyboard

Portrait

Landscape
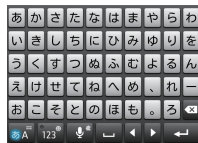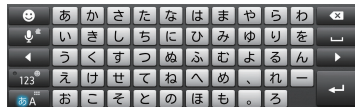
■ QWERTY keyboard

Portrait

Landscape

■ Japanese syllabary keyboard
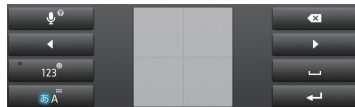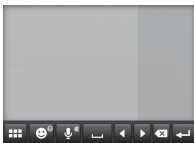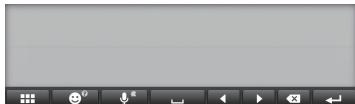

Portrait

Landscape

■ Kana handwriting input

Portrait

Landscape

■ Kanji handwriting input

Portrait

Landscape

❖**Information**
- The key display of software keyboard varies depending on the entry screen, character mode or settings.

Changing software keyboard and settings

1 **On a character entry screen, touch and hold 🔤 or tap ▦.**

2 **Tap ✖ / ▣ / ₸ / ⊟ / 🖮 / 🏮 / 🖽 / 🖾 / 🅑 / 🖽.**
- ✖ : Display Japanese keyboard settings screen and check/change the settings.
- ▣ : Display the extensions list.
- ₸ : Switch one-byte/two-byte character.
- ⊟ : Change size and location of software keyboard (except for landscape screen and Kanji handwriting input).
- 🖮 : Hide the software keyboard.
- 🏮 : Display the phonepad keyboard.
- 🖽 : Display the QWERTY keyboard.
- 🖽 : Display the Japanese syllabary keyboard.
- 🅑 : Display the Kana handwriting input.
- 🖽 : Display the Kanji handwriting input.

❖**Information**
- By default, the phonepad keyboard for portrait screen is set and QWERTY keyboard for landscape screen is set. Also, "Word suggestions", "Auto capitalization", and "Spell check" are set to ON for input support.
- Tap 🖬 in Step 2 to change size and location of software keyboard. Drag blue frame to change size. Drag the software keyboard to move to. To restore the software keyboard to the default, tap [Reset].

Entering characters on the phonepad keyboard

Enter characters using the keyboard with multiple-character-assigned keys. Flick input or toggle input is used for character entry.

Icon	Function
あ / ぁ	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and status icons, あ→a / A / a appear in the status bar.

Icon	Function
あ / ぁ Touch and hold	Display a pop-up menu. ✕ : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard ☀ : Display the extensions list 全角 (Two-byte)/ 半角 (One-byte) : Switch character mode 🖬 : Change size and location of software keyboard (except for landscape screen and Kanji handwriting input). ⌨ : Hide the software keyboard ▯ / ▦ / ▤ / ▨ / ▥ : Software keyboard switch
123 / 123	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and status icons, あ / A, etc. → 1, / 1 appear in the status bar.
123 / 123 Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
英数 カナ	Appears before fixing character in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. It displays alphanumeric or katakana conversion candidates assigned to tapped key.
取消	Appears after conversion is fixed to return to text before conversion.
◀	Move the cursor*1 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.

Icon	Function
▶	Move the cursor[*1] : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed[*2], and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
🎤	Input letters by "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A word suggestion list appears. Tap a character string you want to input.
🎤 Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
逆補	Display the previous character (opposite order).
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.

Icon	Function
候補 Touch and hold	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, activate online dictionary to display in conversion candidates.[*3]
全角 / 全角	Appears when entering numbers, tap to switch one-byte/two-byte character.

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen or search screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", 🔍, etc. appear.

*3 To set online dictionary, in Hiragana/Kanji input mode, touch and hold 候補, tap [OK] then mark "Online dictionary", or mark "Online dictionary" in the Japanese keyboard setting screen (P.81).

Before Using the Terminal 64

Settings of entry

■ Flick input
Flick up/down/left/right to enter characters in each column of kana syllabary.

- Ex: Entering characters in "な" column
  You can enter な only by tapping. Flick left for "に", up for "ぬ", right for "ね" and down for "の".

Flick up ぬ ── Tap

Flick left に ← な → ね Flick right

の Flick down
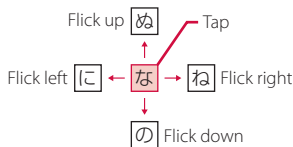
- To switch upper/lower case or change to voiced/semi-voiced sound, tap or flick ゛゜大⇔小 / A⇔a .

- Flick input is available by default. When not using it, you can cancel by the following operations.
  ① On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA .
  ② Tap ⚙.
  ③ [On-screen keyboard settings]▶Unmark "Flick input" checkbox.

- To change sensitivity of the flick input, on a character entry screen, touch and hold あA , tap ⚙ and [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Sensitivity of flick input], then select "High"/"Medium (default)"/"Low".

■ Toggle entry
Tap the same key continuously to enter the assigned character.
To enter characters assigned to the same key continuously, operate the followings.

- Ex: To enter "あお"
  ① Tap "あ" once.
  ② Tap ▶, and tap "あ" 5 times.
- Ex: To enter "ca"
  ① Tap "abc" 3 times.
  ② Tap ▶*.
  ③ Tap "abc" once.
  * In some applications, tap A⇔a in Step ②.

- To switch upper/lower case or change to voiced/semi-voiced sound, tap ゛゜大⇔小 / A⇔a .

- Multitap text input is available by default. When not using it, you can cancel by the following operations.
  ① On a character entry screen, touch and hold [あA].
  ② Tap [×].
  ③ [On-screen keyboard settings]▶Unmark "Multitap text input" checkbox.

❖Information

- In case of Multitap text input, when the tapped key's highlighter goes off and you can enter a character assigned to the same key consecutively without tapping [▶].

Entering characters on the QWERTY keyboard

Enter characters using a keyboard with characters allocated in the same arrangement as general PCs. Enter Japanese in Roman character.

Icon	Function
[あA] / [あA]	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and status icons, [あ]→[a] / [A] / [Ā] / [a] / [A] / [Ā] appear in the status bar.
[あA] / [あA] Touch and hold	Display a pop-up menu. [×] : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard [●] : Display the extensions list [*全] (Two-byte)/ [*全] (One-byte) : Switch character mode [□] : Change size and location of software keyboard (except for landscape screen and Kanji handwriting input) [▦] : Hide the software keyboard [▤] / [▤] / [▦] / [▦] / [▦] : Software keyboard switch
[123] / [123]	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and status icons, [あ] / [A], etc. →[1] / [1] appear in the status bar.

Icon	Function
123* / 123* Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
◄	Move the cursor[*1] : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
►	Move the cursor[*1] : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed[*2], and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
🎤	Input letters by "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A word suggestion list appears. Tap a character string you want to input.

Icon	Function
🎤 Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
英数カナ	Appears before fixing character in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. It displays alphabet or katakana conversion candidates assigned to tapped key.
⇧ / ⇧ / ⇧	In alphanumerics input mode, tap to switch capitalization/upper case/lower case.
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
候補 Touch and hold	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, activate online dictionary to display in conversion candidates.[*3]
全角 / 全角	Appears in number input mode. Tap to switch numbers or symbols to one-byte/two-byte characters.

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.
*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen or search screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", 🔍, etc. appear.
*3 To set online dictionary, in Hiragana/Kanji input mode, touch and hold 候補, tap [OK] then mark "Online dictionary", or mark "Online dictionary" in the Japanese keyboard setting screen (P.81).

Selecting an assistant keyboard

When you enter in Hiragana/Kanji input mode using the QWERTY keyboard, you can change the assistant keyboard to make the frequent using keys to be displayed widely for easy tapping.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold 🔤.

2 Tap ✖.

3 Tap [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Choose key type].

4 Tap any of [Wide]/[Highlight]/ [Dynamic]/[Standard].

5 Tap [OK].

■ Wide
Widen frequent using key for easy tapping.

■ Highlight
Widen frequent using key and highlight the key that is predicted for the next entry.

■ Dynamic
Widen the key that is predicted for the next entry much further and highlight it.

■ Standard
Display equally the width of each key. Settings of "Hide keys" (P.69) are not valid and all keys are shown.

Changing display keys

You can set not to display less-frequent-used keys (Q, X, C, etc.) on the QWERTY keyboard.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold ⓐ.

2 Tap ⓧ.

3 Tap [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Hide keys].
   • When the Choose key type (P.68) is set to "Standard", "Hide keys" cannot be selected.

Hide keys

Unmark the checkbox next to the letter(s) you do not want to show on the keyboard

1st row
   Q

2nd row
   L

3rd row
   X   C   V

Cancel   OK
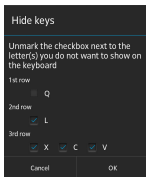
4 Unmark the checkbox of the key you want to hide.

5 Tap [OK].

Customizing keyboard

You can change symbols which are displayed in QWERTY keyboard when entering number to desired characters/symbols.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold ⓐ.

2 Tap ⓧ.

3 Tap [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Keyboard customization].

Keyboard customization

Tap the key and enter a character you want to replace it with

Cancel   OK

4 Tap a symbol you want to change and delete character previously set, then enter a character to display and tap [OK].
   • Only one character (two-byte or one-byte character) can be set.

5 Tap [OK].

❖**Information**
• To return to the default status, on the keyboard customize screen, tap ⋮, then tap [Reset]▶[OK].

Entering characters on the Japanese syllabary keyboard

You can use the software keys arranged according to the Japanese syllabary.

Icon	Function
あA / あA	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and status icons, あ→a / A / A / a / A / A appear in the status bar.
あA / あA Touch and hold	Display a pop-up menu. ✻ : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard 🐧 : Display the extensions list 半全 (Two-byte)/半全 (One-byte) : Switch character mode 🔲 : Change size and location of software keyboard (except for landscape screen and Kanji handwriting input) ⌨ : Hide the software keyboard 🔲 / 🔲 / 🔲 / 🔲 / 🔲 : Software keyboard switch
大⇔小	Appears in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. Switch upper/lower case or add voiced sound/semi-voiced sound.
123 / 123	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and status icons, あ / A, etc. → 1 / 1 appear in the status bar.

Icon	Function
123 / 123 Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
◀	Move the cursor[*1] : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
▶	Move the cursor[*1] : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed[*2], and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
🎤	Input letters by "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A word suggestion list appears. Tap a character string you want to input.

Icon	Function
🎤* Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
⬆ / ⬆ / ⬆	In alphanumerics input mode, tap to switch capitalization/upper case/lower case or switch allocated symbol type.
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
候補 Touch and hold	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, activate online dictionary to display in conversion candidates.[3]
😊	Appears in landscape mode, and you can enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.
*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen or search screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", 🔍, etc. appear.
*3 To set online dictionary, in Hiragana/Kanji input mode, touch and hold 候補, tap [OK] then mark "Online dictionary", or mark "Online dictionary" in the Japanese keyboard setting screen (P.81).

Entering characters on the Kana handwriting input

Trace characters on the Kana handwriting area to enter Hiragana, Alphabet, Number, a part of symbols by handwriting.

Icon	Function
あA / あA	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and status icons, あ → a / A / a appear in the status bar.
あA / あA Touch and hold	Display a pop-up menu. ✕ : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard ☀ : Display the extensions list 二全 (Two-byte)/ 二全 (One-byte) : Switch character mode 🔲 : Change size and location of software keyboard (except for landscape screen and Kanji handwriting input) ⌨ : Hide the software keyboard 🔳 / 🔲 / 🔲 / 🔳 / 🔳 : Software keyboard switch
大↔小	Appears in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. Switch upper/lower case or add voiced sound/semi-voiced sound.
A↔a	Appears in alphanumerics input mode, tap to switch upper case and lower case.

Icon	Function
`123*` / `123*`	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and status icons, あ / A, etc. → `1` / `1` appear in the status bar.
`123*` / `123*` Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
`英数カナ`	Appears before fixing character in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. It displays alphanumeric or katakana conversion candidates assigned to entered characters.
`取消`	Appears after conversion is fixed to return to text before conversion.
`◄`	Move the cursor*1 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
`►`	Move the cursor*1 : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
`↵`	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed*2, and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.

Icon	Function
`✖`	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
`␣`	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
`🎤°`	Input letters by "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A word suggestion list appears. Tap a character string you want to input.
`🎤°` Touch and hold	Kana handwriting input guide in the POBox Touch User Guide (Japanese) activates and you can view the detailed explanations on the Kana handwriting input.
`候補*`	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
`候補*` Touch and hold	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, activate online dictionary to display in conversion candidates.*3
`☺`	Appears when entering number. Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen or search screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", ![p icon] , etc. appear.

*3 To set online dictionary, in Hiragana/Kanji input mode, touch and hold ![icon] , tap [OK] then mark "Online dictionary", or mark "Online dictionary" in the Japanese keyboard setting screen (P.81).

❖**Information**
- When you enter character by Kana handwriting for the first time, read a guidance and tap [OK].
- You can enter a character continuously without deleting entered character.
- For voiced sound and semi voiced sound mark, enter in the right upper part of the Kana handwriting input screen.
- For punctuation mark and lower case, enter in the lower part from the center of the Kana handwriting input.
- For entering alphabet, enter it with reference to lower horizontal line of the Kana handwriting input screen.

Entering characters on the Kanji handwriting input

You can input Hiragana, Kanji, Katakana, Alphabet, Number, a part of symbols by tracing characters on Kanji handwriting area without switching input mode.

Icon	Function
![menu icon]	Display a pop-up menu. ![x icon] : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard ![star icon] : Display the extensions list ![two-byte icon] (Two-byte)/ ![one-byte icon] (One-byte) : Switch character mode ![hide icon] : Hide the software keyboard ![sw icons] : Software keyboard switch
![smiley icon] / ![smiley icon]*1	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
![smiley icon] Touch and hold	The Kana handwriting input guide in the POBox Touch User Guide (Japanese) activates. You can view the detailed explanations for the handwriting input.
![smiley icon]*1 Touch and hold	When inputting character, activate online dictionary to display in conversion candidates.*2

Icon	Function
🎤	Enter characters by "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". Input candidates list appears. Tap a character string to enter.
🎤 Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
直変換	Display direct conversion candidates when entering characters.
候補	When entering characters, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
◀	Move the cursor*3 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
▶	Move the cursor*3 : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed*4 and pressing it fixes characters to enter or convert. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.

*1 Appears when entering characters.

*2 To set online dictionary, when inputting character, touch and hold 😊 , tap [OK] then mark "Online dictionary", or mark "Online dictionary" in the Japanese keyboard setting screen (P.81).

*3 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

*4 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen or search screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", 🔍 , etc. appear.

❖**Information**
- When you enter character by Kanji handwriting for the first time, read a guidance and tap [OK].
- On the character entry screen, tap ▦ , ⚙ , then [On-screen keyboard settings]▶Mark "Auto scrolling" to display a gray area on the right of Kanji handwriting input. Input characters to the area to scroll the input area to the left automatically. When you unmark "Auto scrolling", tap ≫ on the Kanji handwriting input screen to scroll the input area.
- For voiced/semi-voiced sound mark, enter in the upper part from the Kanji handwriting input screen.
- For punctuation mark and lower case, enter in the lower part from the center of the Kanji handwriting input screen.
- Tap an icon at the upper left of entered character to display candidates for the entered character. Character displayed in blue is the recognized. Color displayed below conversion candidate indicates a character type: Green means Hiragana, yellow means Kanji, orange means Katakana, dark blue means Alphabet, purple means number and light blue means symbol.
- When entering 2 or more characters and tapping an icon at the upper left, 🔵 appears. Tap 🔵 to combine entered 2 characters to 1 character.

- When entering characters, tap ✕ to delete entered characters.

Editing text

In the character entry screen such as mail, phonebook, etc., double-tap text you want to edit so that text edit menu appears at the top of the screen. Drag ◢ or ◣ to change the character string to select.

▦ (Select all)	Select all entered text.
✄ (Cut)	Cut a selected character string.
▯ (Copy)	Copy a selected character string.
▯ (Paste)	Paste a copied/cut character string.
✓ (Complete)	Close the edit menu.

❖**Information**
- To paste a copied or cut character string, touch and hold a position where you want to insert, then tap [PASTE]. Alternatively, when texts are entered, tap a position where you want to insert, then tap ◢ and [PASTE].
- Edit menu icons vary by applications.
- In the landscape screen, editing menu may not be displayed.

Setting character entry

For each input method, you can make settings related to character entry.

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input].

2 Tap 🔧 on "Google voice typing"/ "Moji-Henshu"/"Xperia™ Chinese keyboard"/"Xperia™ Japanese keyboard"/"Xperia™ keyboard".
  - Settings screen for respective input method appears. Tap an item displayed on the screen to set.

❖**Information**
- The items vary depending on the input method.
- Alternatively, while entering characters, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Choose input method] ▶ [Set up input methods], then tap 🔧 for each input method to display.
- 🔧 on the "Xperia™ Chinese keyboard" is not available by default. To set Chinese keyboard, mark "Xperia™ Chinese keyboard" in Step 2, then tap 🔧.

Setting Xperia™ Japanese keyboard

Displaying the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard

1 From the Home screen, tap [image], then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input].

2 Tap [image] on "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard".
- The setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard appears.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, on a character entry screen, touch and hold [image] or tap [image] and then tap [image] to display the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard. Alternatively, while entering characters, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Choose input method] ▶ [Set up input methods], then tap [image] for "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard" to display.

Common settings of software keyboard

Make keyboard settings such as Key sound, Vibrate, etc.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [On-screen keyboard settings].
- Set items for "COMMON ON-SCREEN KEYBOARD SETTINGS".

Sound on keypress	Set whether to sound at the time of key tapping.
Vibration on keypress	Set whether to vibrate at the time of key tapping.
Vibration intensity	When "Vibration on keypress" is set, you can set vibration intensity by dragging the slider left or right.
Pop-up on keypress	Set whether to magnify tapped key or display flick guide.
No. of lines (portrait)	Set number of lines for conversion candidates displayed in portrait mode.
No. of lines (landscape)	Set number of lines for conversion candidates displayed in landscape mode.

❖**Information**
- "Sound on keypress" volume is linked to "Ringtone & notifications" (P.206) of volume in Volumes.
- By default, conversion candidates are set to be displayed in 2 lines in portrait/landscape screen.

Keeping keyboard type

Set to stabilize the last status of keyboard (phonepad/QWERTY/Japanese syllabary keyboard/Kana handwriting input/Kanji handwriting input) in the each portrait/landscape screen in kana/alphabet/number input mode.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [On-screen keyboard settings].

2 Mark [Keep keyboard type].

❖**Information**
- You can set to stabilize the last status of keyboard in the each portrait/landscape screen without marking "Keep keyboard type".

Input support

You can set support functions for character input such as Word suggestion function, Setting voice input.

Setting Word suggestion

The Word suggestion function shows predicted conversion candidates when you enter Japanese/English characters. Mark the checkbox of Word suggestion checkbox to set "Spell check" and "Auto space". That helps you entering characters with ease.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Input support].

2 Mark "Word suggestions".

❖**Information**
- Flick or drag downwards in the word suggestion field to enlarge the word suggestion field and to hide the keyboard. Tap [前候補 (Previous suggestion)]/[次候補 (Next suggestion)]/[確定 (Fix)] shown below the word suggestions to select/fix characters to be entered. To show the software keyboard, tap [戻る (Back)] or �.
- In Hiragana/Kanji input mode (in inputting character when using Kanji handwriting input), tap [直変 (Direct conversion)]/[予測 (Prediction)] in the word suggestion field to display direct conversion candidates/predicted conversion candidates.

Setting voice input

Set voice input to "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing".

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Input support]▶[Voice typing].

2 Tap [docomo voice input]/[Google voice typing].

❖**Information**
- "docomo voice input" is set by default.
- When you tap 🎤 on the software keyboard for the first time, you can select whether to activate docomo voice input or change to Google voice typing.

Auto capitalization

Set to capitalize automatically the top letter you enter in one-byte alphabet entry mode (except for Kana handwriting input and Kanji handwriting input).

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Input support].

2 Mark "Auto capitalization".

❖**Information**
- The top letter may not always be capitalized automatically in one-byte alphabet entry mode when "Auto capitalization" is marked.

Setting Spell check

Spell check corrects mistyped characters and shows conversion candidates before conversion in one-byte alphabet input mode when entering characters with QWERTY keyboard or Japanese syllabary keyboard.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Input support].

2 Mark "Spell check".

❖**Information**
- If Word suggestion function (P.77) is not set, Spell check is not available.

Setting Auto space

When selecting English word suggestion, Auto space enters next to the entered character (Except for Kanji handwriting input). However, space is not entered automatically in the mail address or URL input fields.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Input support].

2 Mark "Auto space".

❖**Information**
- If Word suggestion function (P.77) is not set, Auto space is not available.

Setting keyboard skin

You can change software keyboard skin.

1 **On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Keyboard skin].**

2 **Select from keyboards displayed by flicking left or right and tap [Set skin].**

❖**Information**
- To download and add keyboard skins from a website, tap [Search for skin] in Step 2. Some keyboard skins downloaded from website may not support the terminal.
- To delete the downloaded keyboard skin, from the Home screen, tap ⊞, and tap [Settings]▶[Apps]▶"Downloaded" tab, and tap the keyboard skin you want to delete, and then tap [Uninstall]▶[OK]▶[OK]. Also, tap [Uninstall] in Step 2 so that you can delete the keyboard skin that is not compatible with the terminal.

Using extensions

You can use or add extensions when entering characters.

Using Contact Picker 2.3

If contacts are registered to the Contacts, you can use "Contact Picker 2.3" to enter contact information when entering characters.

1 **On a character entry screen, touch and hold ⊞ or tap ⊞ .**

2 **Tap ⊡ .**

3 **Tap [Contact Picker 2.3]▶"Contacts" tab.**

4 **Tap the contact to pick up.**
- When you enter a name or reading in the search box at the top of the screen, a list of contacts appears accordingly.

5 **Mark items you want to quote and tap [OK].**
- If you want to select/deselect all items, tap [Mark all]/[Unmark all].

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, on a character entry screen, touch and hold ⊡ to display the available extensions list (except for Kana handwriting input).
- "History" tab displays contacts that are picked up when entering characters.

Adding an extension

You can install extensions to use when
entering characters.

**1 On the setting screen for Xperia™
    Japanese keyboard, tap [Manage
    extensions].**

**2 On the how to start extensions
    screen, tap [OK].**
   • Extensions settings screen appears.

3 Tap [Download new extensions].
   • Extensions list screen appears.

**4 Select an application you want to
    add.**
   • After this step, follow the onscreen
     instructions.

❖**Information**
• Marked extensions in the extensions settings screen
  can be activated in the character entry screen. The
  preinstalled extension "Contact Picker 2.3" is marked
  by default.

Setting dictionary

To display the word as the preferred
candidate when entering characters, set the
user dictionary beforehand.

Registering words in user dictionaries

There are 2 types of user dictionaries: "My
words Japanese" and "My words English".

**1 On the setting screen for Xperia™
    Japanese keyboard, tap
    [Dictionaries].**

**2 Tap [My words Japanese]/[My
    words English].**

3 Tap 󰀄 and [Add].

**4 Tap the character input box for
    "Reading" and fill it out.**

**5 Enter a word in the input box for
    "Word" and tap [完了 (Done)] on
    the software keyboard.**

6 Tap [Save].

❖**Information**
• Words registered to My words Japanese are
  displayed as conversion candidates when entering
  Kanji in phonepad/QWERTY/Japanese syllabary/
  Kana handwriting and Kanji handwriting input.

- Words registered to My words English are displayed as conversion candidates when entering alphabet in phonepad/QWERTY/Japanese syllabary/Kana handwriting. During Kanji handwriting input, they are not displayed in the conversion candidates.
- Up to 50 characters (regardless of one-byte or two-byte characters) can be stored for a "Reading" and "Word", and up to 500 items can be stored in the user dictionary.
- Added user dictionary can be edited or deleted. To edit, select an added user dictionary and tap ⋮ , then tap [Edit] for editing and tap [Save]. To delete, select an added user dictionary and tap ⋮ , then tap [Delete]▶[Delete]. To delete all user dictionary, tap ⋮ , then tap [Delete all]▶[Delete].

Setting Words by learning

Learn words selected from the conversion candidates to display as the preferred candidate when entering characters.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Dictionaries] then [Learn words].

2 Mark "Save words while typing".
   - To reset already learned words, tap [Delete saved words]▶[Delete].

❖**Information**
- To delete history for learned words individually, touch and hold a word you want to delete and tap [Delete].

Setting online dictionary

In Hiragana/Kanji input mode (in inputting character when using Kanji handwriting input), activate online dictionary to display in conversion candidates.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Dictionaries] then [Online dictionary].

2 Tap [Online dictionary], then read the note and tap [Agree].
   - "Online dictionary" is marked.

❖**Information**
- In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, touch and hold 候補 (touch and hold 😊 in inputting character when using Kanji handwriting input) to activate online dictionary.

Backing up and restoring dictionary

User dictionary and Words by learning can be backed up onto an internal storage and restored when needed.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Dictionaries] then [Backup & restore].

2 Tap [Backup]/[Restore].

3 Mark a dictionary to back up/ restore.
   • Select "My words Japanese"/"My words English"/"Learn words".

4 Tap [Go].
   • When backing up, a screen asking whether to overwrite the user dictionary on the internal storage appears. When restoring, a screen asking whether to overwrite the user dictionary in the terminal appears.

5 Tap [OK]▶[OK].
   • The data is backed up or restored.

❖**Information**
• If restoring data is failed, user dictionary in the terminal restores to the default. Restore by operating again.
• User dictionary and Words by learning are not backed up onto microSD card.

POBox Touch User Guide

You can view the detailed explanations on the high performance Xperia™ Japanese keyboard from the basic to application. The latest information can be obtained from the websites for extensions or keyboard skins.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [POBox Touch User Guide].
   • POBox Touch User Guide appears.

❖**Information**
• Touch and hold ◆ in the Kana handwriting input screen to activate the Kana handwriting input guide in the POBox Touch User Guide (Japanese), or touch and hold ◆ in the Kanji handwriting input screen to activate Kanji handwriting input guide with which you can view the detailed explanations for the handwriting input.

USB keyboard/Bluetooth keyboard

Connect USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard that supports HID (Human Interface Device) profile with the terminal to enter characters.

■ Using JIS keyboard

1 Connect a USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard and drag the status bar downwards, then tap [Select keyboard layout].
   - If a notification does not appear on the status bar, from the Home screen, tap ▦ and [Settings]▶[Language & input].

2 Tap a name of USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard connected to the terminal.

3 Tap [Set up keyboard layouts]▶[Japanese].
   - JIS keyboard is set. Tap ⌂ etc. to end setting.

❖**Information**
- Some Bluetooth keyboards compatible with HID profiles cannot be used or may not operate properly.
- After ▦ is shown on the status bar of the terminal, enter characters with USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard. If the status icon does not appear, tap character input field.
- Press "半角/全角 (one-byte/two-byte)" key on a USB JIS keyboard or Bluetooth JIS keyboard to switch the Roman alphabet kana input/Alphabet input on the terminal. For English keyboards, pressing " ` " key (grave key) switches the input mode.
- While displaying word suggestions, press "Tab" key/ " ↓ " key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to select a word in word suggestions.
- While not selecting a word in word suggestions, press "Space" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to switch to direct conversion.
- You can edit texts with connected USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard. For instructions on editing texts on the terminal, see "Editing text" (P.75).
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "A" key to select all entered text.
  - Press "Shift" key and "←" key or "Shift" key and "→" key to partly select entered text from cursor.
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "X" key to cut a selected character string.
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "C" key to copy a selected character string.
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "V" key to paste a copied or cut character string.
- While displaying word suggestions, press "無変換 (No conversion)" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to switch word suggestions to alphanumeric conversion.

- While displaying word suggestions, press "Shift" key/ "Alt" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to activate Online dictionary. You need to mark "Online dictionary" checkbox in the Japanese keyboard setting screen beforehand.
- Current conversion candidate settings (word prediction/direct conversion/alphanumeric conversion/online dictionary) are displayed between character input field and conversion candidate field and selection method for conversion candidate is displayed.
- While displaying word suggestions, press "Function" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to convert to hiragana/katakana/alphabet.
  - Press "F6" to convert to hiragana.
  - Press "F7" to convert to two-byte katakana.
  - Press "F8" to convert to one-byte katakana.
  - Press "F9" to convert to two-byte alphabet.
  - Press "F10" to convert to one-byte alphabet.

Home screen

Tapping [⌂] displays Home screen which consists of up to 12 screens you can use flicking left and right.

"ひつじのしつじくん®
(Butler Sheep)"
©NTT DOCOMO

ⓐ Current home screen position
   • Flick the Home screen left or right to switch.
ⓑ Widget : Google Search
ⓒ Widget : i-channel
ⓓ Widget : Machi-chara
ⓔ Shortcuts (applications)
ⓕ Applications button
ⓖ Wallpaper

❖**Information**
- You can switch the home application between "docomo" and "Xperia™" in the terminal. For changing home application, see "Switching Home application" (P.58).
- When the instruction guide for the Home screen appears, tap [Do not show this again]/[OK] to display the Home screen.

Displaying a list of home screens

1 **From the Home screen, pinch-in.**
   • A home screen list appears.

❖**Information**
- Touch an hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap [Home screens] to display list of home screens.
- When the instruction guide for the home screen list appears, tap [Do not show this again]/[OK].
- To return to the home screen, pinch-out, or tap [⌂] or [↰].

Managing the Home screen

Adding to the Home screen

1 **Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.**
   • "Select an action" menu appears to change the Home screen.

■ Select an action

Shortcut	Add shortcuts of applications or favorites (P.86).
Widget	Add widgets (P.86).
Folder	Create a new folder (P.88).

Kisekae	Change the background of the Home screen or Application screen, or download from website to add (P.90).
Wallpaper	Select from "Album", "Live Wallpapers", or "Xperia™ wallpapers" to set wallpaper (P.90).
Group	Add group shortcut of Application screen (P.88).
Home screens	Display a list of home screens and then add, delete, or sort home screens (P.85).
Wallpaper loop settings	Set whether to loop wallpaper on the Home screen.

Adding a shortcut to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.85), tap [Shortcut].

2 Select an item you want to add.
 • The shortcut appears on the Home screen.

❖**Information**
• Alternatively, on the Application screen (P.91), touch and hold a group name and then tap [Add].

Adding a widget to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.85), tap [Widget].
 • A list of widgets appears.

Bookmarks	Display bookmarks of Browser.
Bookmarks	Display bookmarks of Chrome.
Calendar	Display events in calendar.
Contact	Display contacts using Contacts application of Xperia™.
Contents Headline	Display recommended music, videos, e-books and applications information at the dmarket.
docomo location information	Activate docomo location information application.
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	Connect/disconnect to Wi-Fi with a one-touch operation in a Wi-Fi area.
Email	Select Email account or folder to display.
Facebook Buttons	Post your comments or select and upload images to Facebook.
Facebook Status	Show or post Facebook comments.
Gmail	Select Gmail account or folder to display.
Google Search	Display the Google search box.
Google+ posts	Display posted contents in Google+.

Infrared	Send your profile or receive a file via infrared.
iチャンネルウィジェット (i-channel widget)	Display latest information such as news or weather.
Music Unlimited	Display Music Unlimited.
NFC Quick Launch	Enable/disable NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function.
NOTTV ウィジェット (NOTTV widget)	Watch programs, contents, etc. of Mobacas (a broadcasting service for smartphone).
OfficeSuite Recent History	Display OfficeSuite recent history.
Personal area	Display personal area.
Phonebook	Display contacts using phonebook application provided by DOCOMO.
Phonebook Select members	Display history of calls or message (SMS) of 3 contacts selected from the phonebook fixed/at random.
Play - My Library	Display videos or books managed in Google Play by selecting from "My Library", "My Book" or "My Movie".
Play Recommendations	Display applications recommended by Google Play by selecting from "All", "Apps", "Books" or "Movies".
Play Store	Display applications recommended by Google Play.
Schedule & Memo	Display memos or photo memos on the calendar.

Screen mirroring	Enable/disable Screen mirroring.
TrackID™	Display TrackID.
Traffic	Enter a widget name and destination to activate the widget showing travel time to the destination. Tap to check supplied traffic information.
YouTube	Display the list of frequently played videos and recommended.
カテゴリナビ (Category navigation)	Display topics or search information by selecting category such as foodie and transfer information.
スマホなるほどツアーズ (Tips of smartphone)	Display スマホなるほどツアーズ (Tips of smartphone).
マチキャラ (Machi-chara)	Display missed calls etc. or use しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier).
診断ツールアプリ (Diagnosis tool app)	Activate diagnosis tool.

2 Select an item.

❖**Information**

- If you install an application from Google Play, the installed application may be added to the widget list.
- "IC Tag/Barcode Reader" on the list of widgets can be added to the Home screen, but it is not available for a widget.
- If the Home screen is set to "Xperia™", some widgets is unavailable.

Adding a folder to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.85), tap [Folder].
   - A folder is added on the Home screen.

❖**Information**
- To rename a folder, tap a folder you want to rename and tap the name entry field to enter a folder name, then [完了 (Done)] on the software keyboard and then tap on the screen. Alternatively, touch and hold a folder you want to rename and tap [Edit name], then enter a folder name and then tap [OK].
- To move a shortcut into a folder, touch and hold a shortcut, then drag it onto any folder.

Adding a group to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.85), tap [Group].

2 Select an item you want to add.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, on the Application screen (P.91), touch and hold a group name and then tap [Add].

Changing the Home screen

You can add, delete, sort home screens while the home screen list is displayed.
- For details on the home screen list, see "Displaying a list of home screens" (P.85).

Adding a home screen

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.
   - A home screen list appears.

2 Tap █.

❖**Information**
- There are 3 home screens by default. The terminal can display up to 12 home screens.

Deleting a home screen

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.
   - A home screen list appears.

2 Tap █ of thumbnail you want to delete on the Home screen.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, on the home screen list, touch and hold a thumbnail of home screen you want to delete and tap [Delete].

Sorting home screens

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.
   • A home screen list appears.

2 Touch and hold a home screen you want to sort.

3 Drag it anywhere.

Moving an icon on the Home screen

1 From the Home screen, touch an icon you want to move.

2 Drag it anywhere.
   • To move to another Home screen, keep touching the icon and drag it to left or right.

Deleting an icon from the Home screen

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold an icon you want to delete.

2 Tap [Delete].

❖**Information**
• Alternatively, touch and hold an icon you want to delete from the Home screen and drag it to [trash] displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Uninstalling a shortcut or widget on the Home screen

• Before uninstalling application, back up contents related to the application or widget that you want to save including data saved in the application or widget.
• Some applications or widgets may not be uninstalled.

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a shortcut or widget you want to uninstall.

2 Tap [Uninstall].
   • A confirmation screen appears for uninstall.

3 Tap [OK]▶[OK].

❖**Information**
• You can also uninstall application from the Settings menu (P.194). For details, see "Deleting installed application" (P.213).

Changing Kisekae

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.85), tap [Kisekae].

2 Flick left or right and tap a Kisekae you want to change to.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, in Step 2, select Kisekae you want to change to and tap [Set] to change Kisekae.
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap 🔳 and 🔳 then tap [Kisekae] to change.
- You can add Kisekae contents by tapping [Search] to download from website. To delete added Kisekae contents, select the image and tap [Delete]▶[Delete].

Changing wallpaper

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.85), tap [Wallpaper].

2 Tap any of [Album]/[Live Wallpapers]/[Xperia™ wallpapers].
- When you tap [Album], select an image and set range of the image by dragging or pinching to adjust the cropping frame, and then tap [Crop] to set wallpaper.
- When you tap [Live Wallpapers], select a content and tap [Set wallpaper]. For some contents, you can change type or contents displayed on the wallpaper by tapping [Settings...].
- When you tap [Xperia™ wallpapers], select an image and tap [Set wallpaper].

❖**Information**
- You can also download wallpapers from websites and add it.
- Alternatively, you can change from the Home screen, tap 🔳 and tap [Settings]▶[Display]▶[Wallpaper].

Application screen

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦ (Applications button).**
   • The Application screen appears.

ⓐ Application tab
   • View Application screen.
ⓑ Recommends tab
   • Install applications recommended by DOCOMO (P.94).
ⓒ Optional menu icon
   • View optional menu such as Settings.
ⓓ Group name
   • You can manage applications by groups.
   • Tap a group name to show/hide applications in the group.
ⓔ Application icon
   • When you download an application from website or a downloaded application is updated, ⭐ appears on the upper left of the application icon.
   • Some application icons are displayed with a number of missed calls, unread mails, etc.
ⓕ Number of applications in the group

ⓖ Applications in the group
   • To display/hide applications in all groups, pinch-out/in the Application screen.

❖**Information**
• When the instruction guide for the Application screen appears, tap [Do not show this again]/[OK].
• To close the Application screen, tap ⬅ or ⌂ .
• Touch and hold an application icon, then tap [About] to check the application information.
• If you selected Japanese as a language in Initial settings (P.39), some group names are displayed in Japanese even after the language setting is changed. These group names can be changed to English (P.93).

Managing applications

Changing the Application screen

From the Application screen, you can add or move application icons, or uninstall applications.

Adding an application shortcut to the Home screen

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon you want to add to the Home screen.

2 Tap [Add].
  - The application icon is added onto the Home screen.

❖**Information**
- Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap [Shortcut] ▶[Application] and select an application to add an icon.

Moving application

1 On the Application screen, touch and hold an icon to move.

2 Drag it anywhere.
  - The application icon is moved.

❖**Information**
- Touch and hold an application icon on the Application screen, tap [Move] and select group, the group of application icons is changed.

Uninstalling an application

Some application icons can be deleted from the Application screen.
- Before uninstalling application, back up contents related to the application that you want to save including data saved in the application.
- Some applications may not be uninstalled.

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon of application you want to uninstall.

2 Tap [Uninstall].
  - A confirmation screen appears for uninstall.

3 Tap [OK]▶[OK].

❖**Information**
- You can also uninstall them from the Settings menu (P.194). For details, see "Deleting installed application" (P.213).

Changing group

Adding group to the Home screen

1 **From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon you want to add to the Home screen.**

2 **Tap [Add].**
   • Shortcuts to the group is added to the Home screen.

❖**Information**
• Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap [Group] and select a group to add a shortcut.

Changing the color of group name

1 **From the Application screen, touch and hold a group you want to change the color.**

2 **Tap [Edit label] and select label color to change.**
   • The color for group name is changed.

Deleting group

1 **From the Application screen, touch and hold a group you want to delete.**

2 **Tap [Delete]▶[OK].**
   • Application icons belonged to the deleted group move to the "Download Application" group.

❖**Information**
• "Recently", "DOCOMO Services", and "Download Application" groups cannot be deleted.

Changing group name

1 **From the Application screen, touch and hold a group you want to rename.**

2 **Tap [Edit name].**

3 **Enter a group name and tap [OK].**
   • The group is renamed.

❖**Information**
• "Recently", "DOCOMO Services", and "Download Application" groups cannot be renamed.

Adding group

1 From the Application screen, tap [icon] and tap [Add group].

2 Enter a group name and tap [OK].
• A new group is added.

Sorting groups

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold a group name you want to sort.

2 Drag it anywhere.
• The group is moved.

Searching for an application

Search application installed into the terminal to activate.

1 From the Application screen, tap [icon] and then tap [Search].
• The software keyboard appears.

2 Enter application name to search.
• Search suggestions appear as you enter a character.

3 Tap an application name.
• The application activates.

❖**Information**
• If a Google account is set, the Google Now screen appears in Step 1 in portrait view. Follow the onscreen instructions.
• Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap [icon], then tap [Google] to search application. For details, see "Searching information in the terminal and web pages" (P.58).

Switching application screens

Icons on the Application screen can be displayed in a list or tiles.

1 From the Application screen, tap [icon] and then tap [List format]/[Tile format].

Installing "Recommends" applications

The "Recommends" tab (P.91) in the Application screen shows applications recommended by DOCOMO.

1 From the Application screen, tap "Recommends" tab.

2 Tap [おすすめアプリを見る (See recommended applications)].

3 Select an application to use.
• Download screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.

- If you tap [おすすめアプリをすべて見る (See all recommended apps)] in Step 3, Browser activates and applications recommended by DOCOMO are displayed in a list.
- Downloaded applications are displayed in "Download Application" group in the Application screen.

Checking Home application information

1 From the Application screen, tap ⋮ and then tap [Application info].
- The home application information appears.

Making/Receiving a call

Making a call

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Enter the number of the recipient and tap 📞.**
   • If a wrong number is entered, tap 🔙 to delete the number.

3 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

❖**Information**
• In Step 2, tap 📞 without entering a phone number to enter the phone number registered as the latest call in Recent calls.
• To activate Xperia™ phone application, from the Home screen, tap 🔡, then tap [Dial].

Entering pause (,), (;) to send

For using services requiring entry of number during a call such as check of the balance of a bank account, reservation of tickets, etc., enter an additional number to a phone number beforehand and make a call.

■ Using 2-second pause (,)

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Enter the phone number, then tap ⋮ and tap [Add 2–sec pause].**
   • Pause (,) is entered.

3 **Enter an additional number, then tap 📞.**
   • Added number will automatically be sent approximately 2 seconds after the call is made.

4 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

■ Using a wait (;)

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Enter a phone number, tap ⋮ and tap [Add wait].**
   • Pause (;) is entered.

3 **Enter an additional number, then tap 📞.**
   • When a call is received, a confirmation screen asking if you send the added number appears. Select "Yes" or "No".

4 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

Emergency call

When the terminal is within range of the service area, you can make an emergency call of 110 (Police), 119 (Fire and ambulance), or 118 (Japan Coast Guard).

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Enter the number of the emergency call and tap 📞.**
   • If a wrong number is entered, tap ⌫ to delete the number.

3 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

❖**Note**
• If docomo mini UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, emergency calls (110, 119, 118) cannot be made in Japan.
• You can make an emergency call by tapping [Emergency call] on the unlock screen. In Japan, however, on the PIN code entry screen, while PIN code locked or while PUK locked, emergency calls (110, 119, 118) cannot be made.
• This terminal supports "Emergency call location information". If you use the terminal to place a call to emergency numbers such as 110, 119, or 118, the information of a location where you are calling from (location information) is automatically notified to the Emergency call acceptance organization such as the Police Station.

The Emergency call acceptance organization may not be able to figure out your exact location depending on the location where you place a call or radio wave condition.
If you make a call hiding your caller ID, such as by entering a phone number with "184" for each call, the location information and phone number are not notified. However, the Emergency call acceptance organization may decide to obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings when they consider it is necessary for lifesaving, etc. Note that the areas/time for which the "Emergency call location information" is ready to be used vary depending on the preparatory state of each Emergency call acceptance organization.
• When calling 110, 119 or 118 for emergency from the terminal, tell that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and your current location precisely for checking callback from the police/fire department. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the terminal for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.
• Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from. In this case, try to call from a public phone or a land-line phone in the neighborhood.

Making an international call (WORLD CALL)

For details on WORLD CALL, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Touch and hold [0] key until "+" sign appears.**
- When making an international call, "+" is replaced by an international access code.

3 **Enter Country code▶Area code (City code)▶The number of the recipient and tap 📞.**
- If the area code begins with "0", omit "0". However, "0" may be required to dial to some countries or areas such as Italy.

4 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

Receiving a call

1 **While receiving a call, touch and hold 📞 (left) and drag it to 📞 (right).**

2 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

❖**Information**
- Even if the screen lock is set, you can answer a call by the same operation.

Muting the ringtone for an incoming call

1 **When receiving a call, press ◁▷ / ⑩.**

❖**Information**
- You can stop vibration by pressing ◁▷ / ⑩ when silent mode (vibration) is set.
- On the Home screen etc., press upper or lower of ◁▷ to adjust the ringtone volume. For silent mode setting, see "Setting silent mode" (P.42).

Declining a call

1 **While receiving a call, touch and hold 📞 (right) and drag it to 🔇 (left).**

❖**Information**
- Even if the screen lock is set you can reject a call by the same operation.
- If you reject an incoming call during use of Voice Mail Service, the call is connected to the Voice Mail service center.

Declining an incoming call and sending a message (SMS)

When you cannot answer a call, you can reject the call and send a message (SMS). Message to send is registered in advance, and you can edit it if necessary.
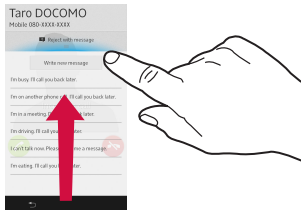
1 Drag `Reject with message` **upwards when receiving a call.**

2 Tap a message to send.
 • The message (SMS) is sent to the caller.

❖**Information**
 • While Voice Mail service is in use, a call is rejected and a message (SMS) is sent then the caller is connected to the Voice Mail service center.
 • To create a new message to send, when receiving a call, drag `Reject with message` up and tap [Write new message] to create a message and send. To edit a message, from the Home screen, tap 📞 and ⋮, then tap [Call settings]▶[Reject call with message] to select and edit an existing message, then tap [OK].

Operations during a call

Calling screen

On the Calling screen, you can set speakerphone or mute, or enter a phone number to make a call to another party.
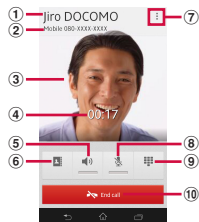
① Name of the other party
② Number of the other party
③ A photo saved in Phonebook
④ Call duration time
⑤ Speaker : Set speakerphone on/off.
 • Other party's voice can be heard from the speaker and handsfree call can be made.
 • When you switch to the other screen such as the Home screen with the speakerphone on, 🔊 appears in the status bar.
⑥ Phonebook : View phonebook entry list screen (P.104).
⑦ Option menu : Set Hold during a call.
 • To cancel Hold, tap [Retrieve call] during Hold.
 • To set a call on hold, "Call waiting" subscription is required (P.102).

h Mute : Turn the microphone on/off during a call.
   • When you switch to the other screen such as the Home screen with Mute on, 📵 appears in the status bar.
i Dial key : Enter the phone number you want to add to make a call.
   • The ongoing call is automatically on hold.
   • To add a call, "Call waiting" subscription is required (P.102).
j Ending a call

❖**Note**
• Do not bring the terminal close to your ear with the speakerphone on to avoid from hearing damage.

❖**Information**
• When you switch to the other screen such as the Home screen during a call, 📞 appears in the status bar. Drag the status bar and tap [Ongoing call] to display the calling screen. Tap [Mute] to set Mute to on/off for the microphone, or tap [Hang up] to end the call.

Adjusting the earpiece volume

1 During a call, press ◁ ▷ to adjust.

❖**Information**
• You can adjust the earpiece volume only during a call.

Call history

Showing call history

1 From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Recent calls" tab.
   • Recent calls screen appears.

Recent calls screen

Incoming call and outgoing call are displayed by chronological order in the Recent calls screen.

a All tab
b Phone number/name
c History icons
   ✕➡ : Missed call
   From➡ : Incoming call
   To➡ : Outgoing call
d Incoming tab
e Outgoing tab

⑥ Call status icons

   📭 : Koe-no-Takuhaibin
- For details on Koe-no-Takuhaibin, refer to "Koe-no-Takuhaibin" (P.102) or NTT DOCOMO website.

   📞 : Caller ID notified

   📞 : Caller ID hidden
- It appears when prefix "186" (Notify)/"184" (Not notify) is entered to a phone number to make a call, or when you enter a phone number and tap ⋮, then tap [Caller ID notification]▶Tap [Notify]/ [Not notify] to make a call.

   📲 : Incoming/outgoing international call

⑦ Date

⑧ Outgoing

⑨ Phonebook

❖**Information**
- On the Recent calls screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Call settings] to set/edit "Network service" or "Reject call with message" (P.102).

Making a call from Recent calls

1 On the Recent calls screen (P.100), tap 📞 .

Adding a number from the Recent calls to Phonebook

1 On the Recent calls screen (P.100), tap a phone number and tap [Add Phonebook].
- Alternatively, touch and hold a phone number, tap [Edit number before call]▶[Add Phonebook].

2 Tap [Register new] or a phonebook to add.
- When you set a Google account etc., tap [Register new] so that you can select that account as a registration account.

3 On the Edit profile screen, enter required items.
- You can set a name, mail address, group, etc. Tap ︿ in "Others", tap [Add] of an item you want to register, and then enter.

4 Tap [Save].

Deleting a call history

1 On the Recent calls screen (P.100), touch and hold an item you want to delete in outgoing call log/ incoming call log.

2 Tap [Delete from call log]▶[OK].

❖**Information**
- To delete all items from Incoming log or Outgoing log, on the Recent calls screen, tap "Incoming" tab/ "Outgoing" tab and tap ⋮ , then [Delete all]▶[OK].
- To delete all items from Incoming log and Outgoing log, on the Recent calls screen, tap "All" tab and tap ⋮ , then [Delete all]▶[OK].

Displaying missed calls

When you have missed calls, ▰ appears in the status bar.

1   Drag the status bar downwards.

2   Tap [Missed call].
  • Recent calls screen appears.

❖**Information**
  • For 1 missed call, drag the status bar, "Call back" and "Message" are displayed below "Missed call". Tap [Call back] to make a call to the party of the missed call, or tap [Message] to compose message (SMS) to send to the party. "Call back" and "Message" may not appear depending on notifications in the Notification panel. For multiple missed calls, number of calls appears below "Missed call".
  • When you have missed calls, an icon appears on the unlock screen to show that you have missed calls and a number of those.

Call settings

You can set the network services, register call rejection or edit Reject call with message.

1   From the Home screen, tap ▰, then tap ▰ .

2   Tap [Call settings].
  • You can set the following options.

Network service	Koe-no-Takuhaibin	Koe-no-Takuhaibin is a service of taking voice messages for you.
	Voice mail service	It is a service of taking caller's message when you cannot answer an incoming call.
	Call forwarding service	It is a service of transferring call when you cannot answer an incoming call.
	Call Waiting	It is a service of putting the current call on hold and answering an incoming call or making a call to another party.
	Caller ID notification	Notify the display of the recipient phone of your phone number.
	Nuisance call blocking service	Register phone numbers of nuisance call to reject.

Network Service	Caller ID display request service	Request number notification for calls without phone number with guidance.
	Second call settings	Set action for a second call.
	Call notification	Notify incoming calls by message (SMS) while the power is off or you are out of service area.
	English guidance	Switch the voice guidance to English or Japanese.
	Remote operation settings	Set to operate Voice Mail Service or Call forwarding Service using land-line phone, public phone or DOCOMO mobile phone, etc.
Roaming settings	Set to reject incoming calls overseas or use roaming guidance (P.255).	
Advanced call settings	Sub address settings	Set whether "*" in phone number is identified as a sub address separator.
	Prefix settings	Register a prefix number added before phone number when making a call.
	Reject unregistered call	Set whether to reject an incoming call with unregistered phone number in the phonebook automatically.

Sound & Vibration settings	Phone ringtone	Set ringtone (P.207).
	Vibrate when ringing	Set whether to sound ringtone and vibrate the terminal when there is an incoming call (P.207).
	Dial pad touch tones	Set whether to emit dialpad operation sound (P.207).
Reject call with message	Edit/set a message (SMS) to be sent when rejecting an incoming call.	
Microphone noise suppression	Make the voice clear to understand for the other party during a call.	
Accounts	Set Internet phone (SIP) account.	
Use Internet calling	Set Internet phone (SIP) call method.	

Phonebook

On the phonebook, you can enter various information for contacts, for example, phone numbers, mail addresses and various service accounts.

Displaying phonebook

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [docomo phonebook]▶"Contacts" tab.**
 • The phonebook list screen appears.

❖**Information**
- When you use for the first time, "Use of Cloud" screen appears. Tap [Start] to start using Cloud. Cloud service in phonebook require DOCOMO's phonebook application.
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap 📞 and tap [Phonebook] to display phonebook list screen.
- Phonebook data can be backed up in a microSD card using "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" application. For information on backing up, see "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" (P.191).
- To activate Xperia™ phone application, from the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Contacts].

Phonebook list screen

On the phonebook list screen, you can view details of your contacts. You can add a picture to a phonebook entry, and display phonebook entries by group.
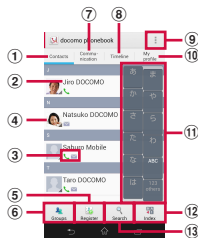
① Contacts tab
② Name registered in the phonebook entry
③ Entry items
 • Icons indicate entry items.
④ Photo set in the phonebook entry
⑤ Register
⑥ Groups
 • Select a group to be displayed.
⑦ Communication tab
 • Call history or history of message (SMS), sp-mode mail and SNS messages are displayed. SNS messages are displayed only when using "My SNS" function after using Cloud is started.
⑧ Timeline tab
 • Timeline of SNS/blog by "Friend NEWS" function and "My SNS" function is displayed. To display, start using Cloud.
⑨ Option menu

ⓐ My profile tab
- Check your own phone number.
ⓑ Index character area
- Tap index character to display phonebook entries allocated to the index character.
ⓒ Index
- Display the index character to search entries in the order of Japanese syllabary, alphabet, etc.
ⓓ Search

Managing phonebook

Adding a new phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap [Register].
- When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account as a registration account.

2 On the Edit profile screen, enter required items.
- You can set a name, phone number, mail address, etc. Tap ⌄ in "Others", tap [Add] of an item you want to register, and then enter.

3 Tap [Save].

❖**Information**
- To check the number of registered data in the phonebook, from the phonebook list screen, tap ⋮ , then tap [Others]▶[About].
- When you save "Phonetic name (first/last)", phonebook list is displayed according to Japanese syllabary order or alphabets order of "Phonetic name". If you enter "First name/Last name" in Kanji without entering "Phonetic name" to add phonebook entry, the name appear in "ABC" field on the phonebook list screen.
- If "docomo" account is selected as saving location when registering phonebook entries, SNS/Blog accounts can be set.
- To set default phone number or mail address from multiple phone numbers or mail addresses, on the Profile screen, touch and hold a phone number or mail address, then tap [Make default number]/[Make default address]. The phone number or mail address is marked on the right. To cancel the setting, on the Profile screen, touch and hold phone number or mail address, then tap [Clear default number]/[Clear default address].

Using phonebook shortcuts

When you tap the photo (image) part on the phonebook list screen (P.104), shortcuts for phone, mail, etc. appear. Tap the shortcut to make a call, or create and send a mail.

📞	Call to registered phone number.
💬	Create and send message (SMS).
💌	Select Email application to create and send an email. • When you set an Email account, 💌 is displayed as ✉. • On the application selection screen, select "Always" or "Just once" after selecting Email application. • If you do not set Gmail account, tap 💌 to display a setting wizard. After an account is set, you can create and send mails.

❖Information

- You can use other functions such as displaying a map from the registered addresses with shortcut.
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, a selection screen appears by tapping a shortcut. If you mark "Save this selection" and then select a phone number, mail address, etc. the selection screen does not appear next time you use the shortcut.
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, if default phone number or mail address is set, the selection screen does not appear by tapping a shortcut.
- When you tap a part other than photo (image) on the phonebook list screen, profile screen of the phonebook appears instead of shortcuts.

- For a phonebook entry with only name, tapping photo (image) does not display shortcuts.

Making a call using the phonebook

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry to call.**

2 **On the Profile screen, tap a phone number.**

3 **Tap [Call].**

Searching for a phonebook entry

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap [Search].**

2 **Enter name or reading to search.**
   • All phonebook entries beginning with those letters (First name/Last name) appear.

Changing contacts display order

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap ⋮ , then tap [Others]▶[Contacts display order].**

2 **Tap any of [Japanese order]/ [Alphabetical order]/[Number order].**

Changing accounts to display

You can set registered phonebook entries to be displayed in the phonebook list.

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap , then tap [Others]▶[Accounts to display].**

2 **Tap [Display all accounts]/ [Customize…].**
   • When you set a Google account etc., you can select docomo account, Google account, etc. as an account to display.
   • Tap [Customize...], select a checkbox for each account, and then customize display of the phonebook list screen.

Displaying phonebook entries by group

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap [Groups].**

2 **Select a group.**
   • Phonebook entries are displayed by the group set when the entry is registered.
   • To hide the group, tap [Close].

Setting group for phonebook entry

Set a group from phonebook list screen.

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap [Groups].**

2 **Touch and hold a phonebook entry to set a group, and then drag it to any group.**

❖**Information**
• To cancel group setting, touch and hold a phonebook entry you want to cancel and then drag it to the set group, or tap a phonebook entry you want to cancel and from the profile screen, tap [Edit]▶[Setting] in Group▶Unmark group and tap [OK]▶[Save].
• When you set Google account etc., display groups by account. You can set/cancel group in the same account.

Creating a new group in Phonebook

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap [Groups]▶[Add].**
   • When "Add" is not displayed, flick up groups to display.
   • When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account for adding.

2 **On the group addition screen, enter color, icon, group name, and tap [OK].**
   • The items vary depending on the account type.

❖**Information**
- You can edit/delete newly created groups and "Family"/"Friends"/"Company", which are saved by default. To edit a group, touch and hold a group and tap [Edit group], then enter editing content and tap [OK]. To delete a group, touch and hold a group and tap [Delete group]▶[OK]. Phonebook entries belonged to the deleted group move to the "No group" tab.
- For one account, you cannot add a group that has the same name as existing groups.

Editing a phonebook entry

1   On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry to edit.

2   On the profile screen, tap [Edit].

3   Select a required item and edit.
- Tap [Add] to set phone number or mail address, or tap [Del] to delete the set information.

4   Tap [Save].

❖**Information**
- You cannot edit contacts for the Facebook account.

Registering a phonebook entry to Favorites

You can mark a phonebook entry as a favorite. The favorite list provides quick access to the phonebook entry you have marked.

1   On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry to combine.

2   On the profile screen, tap [ ].
- The icon turns to [ ] and the entry is registered to Favorites.

❖**Information**
- Phonebook entries saved to the docomo account/ Google account can be added to Favorites.
- To display phonebook entries added to Favorites, on the phonebook list screen, tap [Groups]▶[Favorites], or from the Home screen, tap [ ] and then tap "Favorites" tab.

Setting photo in a phonebook entry

1   On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry you want to add a photo.

2   On the profile screen, tap [Edit].

3   Tap [Setting] for image.

4 **Tap [Take photo]/[Select picture].**
   - When you tap [Take photo], select "Camera" or "Picture effect" and then select "Always" or "Just once" to take a photo. For information on how to shoot by "Picture effect", see "Picture effect" (P.171).
   - When you tap [Select picture], select "Album" or "File Commander" and then to select "Always" or "Just once" to select a picture.

5 **Set image range to be displayed, and then tap [Crop].**
   - Drag or pinch to adjust cropping area to set image range.

6 **Tap [Save].**

❖**Information**
- You can also set photo to a phonebook entry by the following operation.
  From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Album]. Select an image you want to set and tap the screen and ▐, then tap [Use as]▶[Photo of phonebook]. Select a phonebook entry you want to register, set image range to be displayed, and then tap [Crop].

Setting ringtone

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry to set ringtone.**

2 **On the profile screen, tap ▐ and [Set ringtone].**

3 **Select a ringtone and tap [Done].**

❖**Information**
- For docomo account, you can set ringtone by tapping [Setting] for Ringtone on the Edit profile screen. For Google account, on Preferred apps settings (P.215), you can also set "Set all to" or "Contacts" to "Xperia™", then edit phonebook entry using "Contacts" app to set ring tone.
- To set a ringtone other than the ones stored by default, tap ▐.
- Depending on the saving account, ringtone can be set when saving a phonebook entry.

Combining phonebook entries

You can bind multiple phonebook entries together into one.

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry to combine.**

2 **On the profile screen, tap ▐ and [Join/Separate].**
   - Phonebook entries to be combined are displayed.

3 Tap the phonebook entry to combine.

❖**Information**
- To cancel binding, on the profile screen of a phonebook entry you want to separate, tap ⋮ , then tap [Join/Separate]▶[Separate].

Deleting a phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap ⋮ , then tap [Delete].

2 Mark the phonebook entry you want to delete.
- If you want to delete all phonebook entries, tap "Select all".
- Tap [Index] to search phonebook to delete.

3 Tap [Delete]▶[OK].

❖**Information**
- To delete only a phonebook entry, in the phonebook list screen, tap a phonebook entry you want to delete and tap ⋮ , then tap [Delete]▶[OK].

Checking My profile and editing information

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap "My profile" tab.

2 Tap [Edit].

3 On the My profile screen, enter necessary information such as name.
- Tap [Add] to set phone number or mail address, and tap [Set] to add SNS or Blog account. Tap ⌃ in "Others", tap [Add] of an item you want to register, and then enter.

4 Tap [Save].

❖**Information**
- You can register multiple phone numbers, mail addresses, SNS/Blog accounts, etc. in My profile.
- Name card data created with name card creator application can be saved to My profile and be exchanged via network. When you use for the first time, in the phonebook list screen, tap the "My profile" tab, [Create new] and follow the onscreen instructions.

Sending phonebook entries via infrared communication

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap 　, then tap [Others]▶[Send via Infrared].
   • To send an entry, tap [Send one], select entry to send then tap [OK]▶[OK].
   • To send all phonebook entries, tap [Send all] ▶ Tap [Start], enter docomo apps password, tap [OK], then enter the same authentication password as that of the recipient and tap [OK] ▶ [OK] ▶ [OK].

❖**Information**
• When sending all phonebook entries via infrared communication, you need to enter authentication password an docomo apps password. Authentication password is a 4-digit number fixed up between you and other party in advance. For the docomo apps password, see "docomo apps password" (P.215).
• To activate infrared communication in a selected phonebook entry, tap 　 in the profile screen, [Infrared]▶[OK]▶[OK]. To send My profile, tap "My profile" tab in the phonebook entry list screen, tap 　, [Send via infrared]▶[OK]▶[OK]. If a name card is stored in My profile, tapping [Send via infrared] opens a screen to select "send my profile" or "Exchange name card (via infrared)".
• Phonebook entries can be sent using "Infrared" app. For details, refer to "Sending data via infrared communication" (P.234).

Sending phonebook via Bluetooth/ Email/Gmail

Registered phonebook and My profile information can be sent using Bluetooth function (P.236), or email attachment function.

■ Sending phonebook

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap a phonebook entry you want to send.

2 On the profile screen, tap 　 and [Share].

3 Select a sending method.
   • After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

■ Sending phonebook entry currently displayed
Send all entries displayed in the phonebook list screen. For conditions for displaying phonebook entries, see "Changing accounts to display" (P.107).

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap 　, then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Share phonebook data].

3 **Select a sending method and tap [Always]/[Just once].**
   - After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

■ Sending My profile

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap "My profile" tab.**

2 **Tap** **and [Share].**

3 **Select a sending method.**
   - After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
- To use Bluetooth function, turn on Bluetooth function (P.236) in advance, or select [Bluetooth]▶[Turn on] in Step 3.
- To use email, you need to make settings of your email account (P.118).
- If you want to send it as an Email/Gmail attachment, send from a mail composing screen in an account you have set up. If you do not set a Gmail account, a setting wizard appears. After an account is set, you can create and send mails.
- You cannot send some information such as name card data set in the phonebook.

Exporting/Importing phonebook entries

You can export/import phonebook entries from/to a microSD card or docomo mini UIM card. This is useful, for example, when you want to move the contact information to another phone.

❖**Information**
- You can also use a synchronization service for synchronizing your phonebook. For details, refer to "Setting Auto-sync" (P.226).

Exporting phonebook to microSD card

- Insert a microSD card in advance (P.230).

1 **On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap** **, then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].**

2 **Tap [Export to SD card].**

3 **Tap any of [Export one contact data]/[Export some contact data]/[Export all contact data], then tap [OK].**
   - When you tap [Export one contact data]/[Export some contact data], mark a contact to export and tap [OK].

4 **Select [No]/[Yes] for attaching name card.**

5 Tap [OK].

Importing phonebook from microSD card

・Insert a microSD card in advance (P.230).

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap ⋮ , then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Import from SD card].
　・When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account as an import account.
　・If there is only one vCard file, the file is imported immediately.

3 Tap any of [Import one phonebook data]/[Import multiple phonebook data]/[Import all phonebook data], then tap [OK].
　・If you tap [Import one phonebook data]/[Import multiple phonebook data], mark vCard files to import, then tap [OK].
　・If a vCard file has multiple phonebook entries, they are imported all at once.

❖**Information**
・For some phonebook entries, a part of data may not be imported or exported.

Importing phonebook entries from docomo mini UIM card

・Insert a docomo mini UIM card in advance (P.31).

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.104), tap ⋮ , then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Import from SIM card].
　・When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account as an import account.

3 Tap a phonebook entry to import.
　・Phonebook entries are imported.
　・Alternatively, touch and hold a contact to be imported, tap [Import].
　・To import all phonebook entries, tap ⋮ and [Import all].

❖**Information**
・Names and phone numbers can be imported.
・If there is a phonebook entry whose name is matched with the imported entry, the entry is imported as a separated one.
・To export phonebook entries to docomo mini UIM card, use "Contacts" app of Xperia™. Note that only name and the first phone number can be saved because of memory space of docomo mini UIM card. For some phonebook entries, a part of data may not be exported.

sp-mode mail

Send/receive mails using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo.ne.jp).
You can use pictogram and Deco-mail. Mails can be received automatically. For details on sp-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

1 From the Home screen, tap ▢.
- After this step, follow the instructions on the screen.

❖**Information**
- sp-mode mail data can be backed up in a microSD card using "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" app. For information on backing up, see "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" (P.191).

Message (SMS)

You can send and receive text messages up to 70 two-byte characters (up to 160 one-byte characters) with a mobile phone number as the destination.

Sending message (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap ✎ (New mail).

3 Enter the recipient's phone number.
- Tap 👤⁺ to display the contacts list screen to select from registered contacts. When you enter a name or phone number in the box at the top of the screen, a list of contacts matching the entered numbers or letters appears.

4 Tap [Write message] and enter a message.
- Tap ⋮ and [Select message template] to enter by selecting message template registered in "Message template settings" (P.116).

• When the number of entered characters comes close to a limit, a number of enterable characters appears on the upper left of the text box.

5 Tap [Send].

❖**Information**
- For the character entry, see "Character entry" (P.60).
- You can also send/receive text messages to/from customers of overseas network operators. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.
- To send SMS to users of overseas network operators, enter "+", "Country code" and then "the recipient mobile phone number". Enter the phone number without a leading "0", if any. Alternatively, enter "010", "Country code" then "the recipient mobile phone number" in order.
  To reply to the received a message (SMS) overseas, you need to create a new message (SMS). To send a message, in Step 3, enter "010", "Country code" then "the recipient mobile phone number" in order.

Receiving and reading message (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Messaging].

- Messages (SMS) appear per sender. Senders with unread messages (SMS) left are displayed in bold font, and ● is displayed to the left.

2 Select a sender whose messages (SMS) you want to read.

- A message (SMS) appears.

❖**Information**
- When you receive a message (SMS), 🔲 appears on the status bar. To read the message (SMS), drag the status bar downward and tap a notification of message (SMS).
- Tap ☆ / ★ in a message (SMS) to add ★ star. To check starred messages (SMS) in a list, tap ⊞ from the Home screen, tap [Messaging], then tap ⋮ and tap [Starred messages].

Saving phone number of message (SMS) to phonebook

1 From the Home screen, tap [⊞], then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap [👤] of phone number to save and tap [Save].

3 Tap [Register new] or a phonebook to add.
   - When you set Google account etc., tap [Register new] to select the account as a saving location.

4 Enter required items and tap [Save].

❖**Information**
- For a sender registered to the phonebook, tap [👤] or photo (image) in Step 2 to make a call or display the phonebook entry.

Changing settings for Messaging (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap [⊞], then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap [⋮] and [Settings].

Notification tone	Set ringtone when receiving a message (SMS).
Notifications	Set whether to show message (SMS) arrival notification in the status bar.
Notification vibration*	Set whether to vibrate when receiving a message (SMS).
Notification light	Set whether to notify message (SMS) reception by notification LED.
Delivery report	Set whether to mark a message (SMS) you sent each time a recipient receives the message (SMS).
Message template settings	Register phrase that can be inserted when writing a text.
SIM messages	Manage messages (SMS) saved to docomo mini UIM card.
Push settings	Set a message (SMS) sent from the provider.
SMS center number	Check SMS center number.

* While the silent mode (mute) is set, the terminal does not vibrate when receiving a message (SMS).

Deleting a message (SMS)

1 **From the Home screen, tap 🏢, then tap [Messaging].**

2 **Tap a sender/recipient whose messages (SMS) you want to delete.**

3 **Touch and hold a message (SMS) you want to delete.**

4 **Tap [Delete message]▶[Delete].**

❖**Information**
- To delete several messages (SMS), in Step 3, tap ⋮, tap [Delete messages], and mark messages (SMS) you want to delete, then tap 🗑 and tap [Delete].
- To delete all messages (SMS), in Step 3, tap ⋮ and [Delete messages]▶[X selected]▶[Mark all], then tap 🗑 and [Delete].

Deleting messages (SMS) by sender/recipient

1 **From the Home screen, tap 🏢, then tap [Messaging].**

2 **Touch and hold a sender/recipient you want to delete.**
- The sender/recipient to be deleted is marked. To mark all senders/recipients, tap [X selected]▶[Select all].

3 **Tap 🗑 and [Delete].**

❖**Information**
- In Step 2, tap ⋮ and tap [Delete conversations] to select senders/recipients and delete their messages (SMS) or to delete all senders'/recipients' messages (SMS).

Email

You can create an email account provided by mopera U mail, a POP3 or IMAP compatible email account provided by general ISP (provider), or an Exchange ActiveSync account to send or receive email.
You can set multiple Email accounts.

Making initial setting for Email

Set an Email account following the onscreen instructions.
For mopera U mail setting procedure, see "Using mopera U Mail" (P.123).

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Email].

2 Enter your email address and password.

3 Tap [Next].
- To set up an email account manually, tap [Manual setup] and follow the onscreen instructions.

4 Set Inbox check frequency, mark required items and tap [Next].
- If a screen for selecting type of account appears, tap an email account type and follow the onscreen instructions to set.

5 Enter account name and name displayed on emails you send, and tap [Next].
- Inbox for set email account appears.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account, a name displayed for email cannot be set. Set up from "Your name" (P.121) on email account settings after email initial settings is complete.

❖**Information**
- If you need to make the settings manually, contact your email service provider or system administrator for the correct email account settings.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account as an email account, and if server manager sets Remote wipe, the data saved in the terminal may be deleted.

Creating and sending email

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Email].

2 Tap ✉ (Compose).

3 Enter the email address of recipient.
- Tap ▴ to display the contacts list screen to select from registered contacts. When you enter a name or email address in the search box at the top of the screen, a list of contacts matching the entered numbers or letters appears.

- To enter multiple email addresses directly, separate with a comma (,) and then enter the next email address.
- To add Cc or Bcc recipients, tap 🔳 and tap [Show Cc/Bcc].

4 Enter a subject and message.

5 Tap 📧 (Send).

❖**Information**
- To attach a file, while creating an email, tap 📎 and attach a file in the following step.

Add picture	Select a file from the saved image file list to attach it.
Take photo	Start the camera to take a photo and attach it.
Add video	Select a file from the saved video file list to attach it.
Record video	Start the camera to shoot a video and attach it.
Add sound	WALKMAN : Select a file from the saved music file list to attach it. Sound Recorder : Record a voice message and attach it.
Add files	Select files from a saved file list to attach.

- While creating a mail, tap 🔳 and tap [Save draft] to save a mail as a draft. Also, if you view another screen while creating an email, the email is automatically saved as a draft (for saving an email without recipient or subject, or without message text or attachment as a draft, tap 🔙).

- In sent/received emails, a communication data is also included other than text and image displayed on the screen and charges will apply to the data.
- Email is handled as an email from a PC. Your email cannot be received if rejecting emails from PCs is set on a recipient terminal.

Receiving and reading email

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔳, then tap [Email].
- If you have already set an email account, tap [Inbox] to select an email account to receive.

2 In the Inbox, tap 🔄.

3 Tap an email you want to read.
- Email message appears.

❖**Information**
- The sender name of a received email is the name set on sender's terminal.
- If you set "Email notifications" in Account settings (P.121) and set "Inbox check frequency" to an item other than "Manual", 📧 appears in the status bar when you receive a new email. Drag the status bar downwards to read the received email.
- Tap an address of received email to register the address to the phonebook. For addresses already registered to the phonebook or Google Talk, displaying the phonebook entries, selecting an application to create mail, etc. are available.

- In the Inbox or the email message screen, tap ★ to add ☆ star and the email is added to "Starred" folder. To check starred emails in a list, in the Inbox, [Inbox]▶[Show all folders]▶Tap [Starred].
- To add star to multiple emails, in the Inbox, mark emails you want to add stars, then tap ★ at the bottom right of the screen.

Changing Inbox view

Turn Preview pane on and turn the terminal sideways to show preview of email message. To switch to the landscape view, turn Auto-rotate screen on beforehand (P.41).

1 From the Home screen, tap 🖽, then tap [Email].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Settings]▶[General]▶[Preview pane].

3 Tap [Landscape].

❖**Information**
- If you have two or more accounts, change made in any of the accounts applies to all accounts.

Saving attachment file of email

1 From the Home screen, tap 🖽, then tap [Email].

2 Tap email with attached files and tap ⌀.
   - The attached file list is displayed. When attached file is not loaded, tap [Load].

3 Tap [Save] of file you want to save.
   - Tap [View] or [Play] to view or play the attached file.

❖**Information**
- The attached file is saved on the internal storage.

Replying/forwarding email

1 From the Home screen, tap 🖽, then tap [Email].

2 Tap email to reply or forward and tap ↩.

3 Tap any of [Reply]/[Reply all]/ [Forward].
   - When you tap [Forward], enter an email address to forward.

4 Enter a message.

5 Tap ✉ (Send).

❖**Information**
- When you reply or forward an email, the original message contents for replying or forwarding is quoted. To delete the quoted message text, unmark "Include original text".
- When you forward an email, the attachment file of the original message is quoted. To cancel quoting attached file, tap ✕ .

Deleting email

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Email].

2 Tap an email to delete.

3 Tap 🗑 and [Delete].

❖**Information**
- To select and delete several emails, in Inbox, mark emails you want to delete, tap 🗑 and [Delete]. Mark at least 1 email and tap [X selected]▶[Mark all] to mark all emails.

Changing Email account settings

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Email].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Settings].

3 Tap an Email account you want to change the settings for.

Account name	Change account name.
Your name	Change your name (sender name).
Signature	Change your signature.
Quick reply	Register phrase that can be inserted when creating an email.
Default account	Set whether to send email by default, if you set two or more email accounts.
Inbox check frequency	Set whether to check new messages automatically and intervals of automatic check.
Auto download attachments*1	Set whether to download attached file automatically when connecting via Wi-Fi.
Email notifications	Set whether to show email arrival notification in the status bar.
Select ringtone	Set ringtone when receiving an email.
Vibrate*2	Set whether to vibrate when receiving an email.
Notification light	Set whether to notify email reception by notification LED.

Incoming settings	Set mail server for receiving.
Outgoing settings	Set mail server for sending.
Delete account	Delete Email account.

*1 Appears when Gmail account (@gmail.com) is set.
*2 While the silent mode (mute) is set, the terminal does not vibrate when receiving an email.

❖**Information**
- The items vary depending on the account type.
- You can also set "Out of office", "Days to sync", "Sync contacts", "Sync calendar", etc. for an Exchange ActiveSync account. Setting for "Outgoing settings" is not required.
- If you set "Inbox check frequency" to an item other than "Manual", and if you are using the pay-as-you-go data communication, you may be charged every time you check email.
- If you tap [General] in Step 3, you can change whole "Email" app settings.

Setting another Email account

1 **From the Home screen, tap 🔡, then tap [Email].**

2 **Tap [Inbox]▶[Add account].**

3 **Enter your email address and password.**
   - If required, mark "Send email from this account by default.".

4 **Tap [Next].**
   - To set up an email account manually, tap [Manual setup] and follow the onscreen instructions.

5 **Set Inbox check frequency, mark required items and tap [Next].**
   - If a screen for selecting type of account appears, tap an email account type and follow the onscreen instructions to set.

6 **Enter account name and name displayed on emails you send, and tap [Next].**
   - Inbox for set email account appears.
   - If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account, a name displayed for email cannot be set. Set up from "Your name" (P.121) on email account settings after email initial settings is complete.

- If you need to make the settings manually, contact your email service provider or system administrator for the correct email account settings.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account as an email account, and if server manager sets Remote wipe, the data saved in the terminal may be deleted.
- Tap [Inbox] to display a list of set accounts. Tap [Combined view] to display combined Inbox for all accounts.

Deleting Email account

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔢, then tap [Email].

2 Tap 🔢 and [Settings].

3 Tap an account to delete.

4 Tap [Delete account]▶[OK].

Using mopera U Mail

mopera U users can use mopera U Mail.
For mopera U setting procedure, see "Setting mopera U" (P.205).
Mail box capacity of mopera U mail is 50 MB.
It supports both POP mail and IMAP mail.
Also, the Web mail system is available.

■ POP mail

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔢, then tap [Email].
   - If you already set an Email account, tap [Inbox]▶[Add account].

2 Enter mopera U mail address and mopera U password, then tap [Manual setup]/[Next].
   - If you tap [Next], it changes automatically to POP3 account. Go to Step 4.

3 Tap [POP3] from the type of the mail account.

4 Check that you have entered "User name" and "Password" for mopera U correctly, and "mail.mopera.net" for the POP3 server.
   - If you tap [Next] in Step 2, "mail.mopera.net" is entered in the POP3 server field.

5 Select the security type.
   - When you do not set security, select "None".

6 Confirm the entry, then tap [Next].

7 **Enter "mail.mopera.net" for the SMTP server and confirm the entry of "User name" and "Password" for mopera U.**
  - If you tap [Next] in Step 2, you need to mark "Require sign–in" to check entered "User name", "Password" for mopera U.
  - If you tap [Next] in Step 2, "mail.mopera.net" is entered in the SMTP server field. Set "587" in the Port field.

8 **Tap [Next].**

9 **On the account setting screen, set Inbox check frequency, etc. and tap [Next].**

10 **On the account setting screen, enter a display name for sending mail and tap [Next].**
  - The mailer is displayed and the set mail account is available.

❖**Information**
- When "Require sign-in." is unmarked on the SMTP server setting screen, sending mails is not available. Mark "Require sign-in.".

Gmail

Set a Google account. You can use Gmail to send and receive emails.
- If you do not set a Google account, follow the onscreen instructions to set one on the initial setting screen. For details, refer to "Setting Google account" (P.223).
- If you do not synchronize Gmail after Google account is set, "Account not synced" screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
- For details on Gmail, tap 🔳 , then tap [Help] to view the Google help.

Sending Gmail

1 **From the Home screen, tap 🔳 , then tap [Gmail].**

2 **Tap 🖂 (Compose).**

3 **Enter the email address of recipient.**
  - When you enter a name or email address in the email address field, contacts matched to the entered numbers or letters are listed.
  - To add Cc or Bcc recipients, tap 🔳 and tap [Add Cc/Bcc].

4 **Enter a subject and message.**

5 Tap ➤ (Send).

❖**Information**
- To attach a picture or a video, tap 🔢 and then tap [Attach picture]/[Attach video] and select a video to attach.

Refreshing Gmail

1 From the Home screen, tap 🞂, then tap [Gmail].

2 On the Inbox tray, tap 🔄.
- Synchronizing "Gmail" app in the terminal with your Gmail account starts, and the Inbox is refreshed.

Google Talk

You can use Google Talk instant messaging to chat with friends. To use Google Talk, you need to make settings of your Google account. For details, refer to "Setting Google account" (P.223).

Signing in Google Talk

Signing in is unnecessary if you have already set a Google account.

1 From the Home screen, tap 🞂, then tap [Talk].

2 Tap [Existing] and enter user name and password.

3 Tap ▶.
- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
- For details on Google Talk, from the Google Talk screen, tap 🔢 and then tap [Help] to refer to.

Early Warning "Area Mail"

It is a service with which you can receive earthquake early warning, etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency.

- Area Mail is a free service for which subscription is not required.
- Area Mail cannot be received in the following case.
  - During a voice call
  - Out of service area
  - While power is off
  - During International roaming
  - During Airplane mode
  - While updating software
  - When a SIM other than by DOCOMO is inserted
  - While sending/receiving a message (SMS)
- Area Mail may not be received when tethering is set or during packet communications.
- Area Mail that could not be received cannot be received later.

Receiving Early Warning "Area Mail"

A notification content screen appears and you are notified by buzzer sound or dedicated ringtone and vibration.

1 Receive Area Mails automatically.

2 A dedicated ring tone sounds and notification LED flashes when an Area Mail is received.
- Ringtone and ringtone volume cannot be changed.
- The notification LED blinks only when backlight is off.

3 A message body of Area Mail appears automatically.

View received Area Mail later

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Disaster kit].
- When you activate for the first time, "ご利用にあたって (Terms of use)" appears. Tap [Agree] to start using.

2 Tap [Early Warning "Area Mail"].

3 Select an Area Mail from the Area Mail list.
- You can view message of Area Mail.

- If savable amount of Area Mail exceeds the limit of maximum, the oldest one is deleted in order.

Setting Early Warning "Area Mail"

1 From the Home screen, tap [圖], then tap [Disaster kit].

2 Tap [Early Warning "Area Mail"].

3 Tap [圖] and then [Settings].

Receive setting	Set whether to receive Area Mail.
Beep tone	Set sounding time for Area Mail reception and whether to sound a dedicated ringtone even in silent mode.
Check screen image and beep tone	Check the ringtone and screen for reception of earthquake early warning, tsunami warning or disaster/evacuation information.
Other settings	Set receiving/deleting Area Mail other than earthquake early warning, tsunami warning and disaster/evacuation information.

❖**Information**
- Area Mail cannot be set when docomo mini UIM card is not inserted.

Web browser

You can view web pages using web browser like on a PC.
Web browser can be used via packet communication or Wi-Fi network.

Opening Browser

1 From the Home screen, tap [🌐].
- A browser screen appears.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap [圖], then tap [Chrome] to access the Internet to view web pages.

Displaying web pages

Moving to a web page

1 Tap the address entry field on the top of the web page in the Browser screen.
- If web page address entry field is not displayed, flick down the screen to display.

2 Enter a web page address or keyword to search.
- As you enter an address or characters, retrieved web pages list appears.

3 **Tap the displayed candidates list or [Go] on the software keyboard.**
  • You can move the web page.

❖**Information**
• In Step 2, you can tap 🎤 in the address entry field to enter search words by voice and search a web page.

Going back to the previous page

1 **Tap** ⬅.

Adding a new tab

Open multiple tabs and view web pages.

1 **On the Browser screen, tap** ▤ **and** ➕.
  • A new tab opens in the default home page.

Opening new incognito tab

You can view web pages without browser history or search history.

1 **On the Browser screen, tap** ▤ **and** ⋮.

2 **Tap [New incognito tab].**
  • A new tab opens and descriptions for the incognito mode appear.

3 **Display a web page.**
  • For information on displaying web page, see "Moving to a web page" (P.127).

❖**Information**
• 🕵 is displayed on the side of web page address entry while viewing in the incognito tab.
• Web pages you view in the incognito tab does not appear in the history. When the tab is closed, the record of Cookies etc. is erased. Downloaded files or bookmarked web pages are saved even for the incognito tab.

Switching tabs

1 **On the Browser screen, tap** ▤ **and then tap a tab you want to display.**

Closing a tab

1 **On the Browser screen, tap** ▤ **and then tap** ✖ **of a tab to close.**
  • Alternatively, flick a tab left or right to close it.

Zooming in/out a web page

1 Pinch-in/-out on the Browser screen.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, double-tap the browser screen to zoom in.
- Web pages created to fit to the screen cannot be zoomed in/out.

Searching text in a web page

1 On the Browser screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Find on page].
- The search bar appears in the upper part of the screen.

2 Enter a search word.
- When you enter characters, matching characters are emphasized.
- Tap ⌃ / ⌄ to move to next/previous matched item.

❖**Information**
- Tap ✓ to close the search bar.

Copying text in a web page

1 On the Browser screen, touch and hold text you want to copy.

2 Drag ◔ or ◔ to select a range of text to copy.
- Selected text is highlighted in blue.

3 Tap 🄲 (Copy).
- A message "Text copied to clipboard." appears.

4 Touch and hold the entry field on the pasting location, and tap [PASTE].

❖**Information**
- On some web pages, selecting characters may not be available.

Changing Browser settings

You can make settings for homepage, privacy and security, page display, etc.

1 On the Browser screen, tap ⋮ and [Settings].

2 Select an item to change.

Setting a home page

Set home page for opening new tab.

1 **On the Browser screen, tap** ![icon], **then tap [Settings]▶[General].**

2 **Tap [Set homepage] to select an item you want to set as home page.**

Operating links

1 **Open the web page you want to operate the links.**

2 **Tap a link.**
   • Link is highlighted and move to linked web page.

❖**Information**
• When you touch and hold a link including a link or image, or image, "Open", "Open in new tab", "Save link", "Copy link URL", "Select text", "Save image", "View image", "Set as wallpaper" and "Share link" appear.
• When you download a file by "Save link" from websites which require Basic authentication or SSL session, the downloading may be failed.
• Browser recognizes some phone numbers that allow you to call the phone number. Tap the phone number to call.

Managing bookmarks and history

You can check history, save bookmarks, etc.

Bookmarking a web page

1 **On the Browser screen, display the web page you want to bookmark.**

2 **Tap** ![icon] **and [Save to bookmarks].**

3 **Set label etc. and tap [OK].**
   • You can set the following options.

Label	Set a name displayed to the bookmark.
Address	Set URL saved to the bookmark.
Account	When you set a Google account etc. and sync with the browser, you can select the account as a bookmark saving location.
Add to	Add a shortcut of the bookmark on the Home screen or create a folder.

Opening a bookmark

1 On the Browser screen, tap ▦ and [Bookmarks].

2 Tap the bookmark you want to open.

❖**Information**
· Touch and hold a bookmark to edit or delete it.

Checking history

1 On the Browser screen, tap ▦ and tap [Bookmarks]▶"History" tab.

2 Tap the time you browsed the web page, such as [Today] or [Yesterday].
· To check your most visited web pages, tap [Most visited].
· Tap a history to open a web page.

❖**Information**
· On the Browser screen, touch and hold ⤺ to check the history.

Clearing history

1 On the Browser screen, tap ▦ and tap [Bookmarks]▶"History" tab.

2 Tap a time when you viewed, touch and hold a history you want to delete, then tap [Remove from history].

❖**Information**
· To delete history, tap ▦ on the browser screen and [Settings]▶[Privacy & security]▶[Clear history]▶[OK].
· To delete temporary Internet files such as cache, on the Browser screen, tap ▦ and tap [Settings]▶[Privacy & security] and set each item.

dmenu

In dmenu, you can easily access sites recommended by DOCOMO or convenient applications.

Opening dmenu

1 From the Home screen, tap [dmenu].
   • Browser activates to display "dmenu".

❖**Information**
• To use dmenu, Internet connection by packet communication (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi is required.
• For connecting dmenu and downloading applications introduced in dmenu, packet communication charge is applied separately. Some applications automatically perform packet communications.
• Applications introduced by dmenu may include charged ones.

dmarket

You can obtain useful and interesting contents which meet your needs at dmarket.

Opening dmarket

1 From the Home screen, tap [dmarket].
   • When you activate for the first time, "d マーケットソフトウェア使用許諾契約書 (License Agreement)" appears. Mark "Agree" and tap [Start use].

❖**Information**
• For details on dmarket, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Play Store

With Google Play, you can directly access useful applications or fun games which you can download and install on the terminal. And you can send feedback and comments about an application, or report objectionable application or incompatible application with the terminal as an inappropriate content.

- To use Google Play, you need to set a Google account (P.223).
- Some applications and games are free of charge, and the others are paid. On the applications list of Google Play, distinction between free and paid is clearly specified. For details on purchasing, returning and refunding of paid applications, see "Help" (P.134).

Installing applications

1 **From the Home screen, tap [Play Store].**
- When License agreement screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

2 **Search applications and tap an application you want to install.**
- Check the displayed contents carefully and follow the onscreen instructions.
- Be careful especially about applications which access many functions or large amount of data. Downloading an application means that you are responsible for the consequences of using the application on the terminal.

❖**Information**
- Make sure the security of application, then install it at your own risk. The terminal may be infected with a virus and the data may be damaged.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for malfunctions, if any, caused by the application you installed. In such case, the repair is charged even during the warranty period.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any disadvantage brought to you or any third party due to an application you installed.
- Some applications automatically perform packet communications. Packet communication is kept active unless you disconnect it or the time-out is occurred. To disconnect packet communications manually, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Mobile data]. When packet communication is disconnected, 🔳 appears.
- Some applications may be updated automatically.

Deleting application

1 **From the Home screen, tap [Play Store].**

2 **Tap ⬚ and [My apps].**

3 **Tap the applications you want to delete, then tap [Uninstall]▶[OK].**
   • When you uninstall charged applications, a screen for refund may appear. For details, refer to "Help" (P.134).

Help

When you need help or have any questions about Google Play, display the Google Play screen, then tap ⬚ and tap [Help] to open Google Play help page.

Osaifu-Keitai

This function allows you to use "おサイフケータイ対応サービス (Osaifu-Keitai compatible service)" by which you can pay money or use coupon, etc. or "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)" by which you can access information by holding the terminal over a home electric appliances or smart poster.
Electronic money or point values can be saved in the IC card or the docomo mini UIM card.
You can check credit, payment or points of electronic money by using the network. In addition, you can lock your Osaifu-Keitai to provide against loss or theft, and you can use Osaifu-Keitai with safe.
For details on Osaifu-Keitai, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

iC transfer service

The iC transfer service is a service which helps you transfer all data in the IC card for Osaifu-Keitai to your new Osaifu-Keitai when you change Osaifu-Keitai for changing of the model or repair. Data in the docomo mini UIM card remains the same after using the iC transfer service.

Visit a sales outlet such as docomo Shop to use the iC transfer service.

For details on iC transfer service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

Precautions on using the Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal

- The data in the IC card[*1] or the docomo mini UIM card[*2] may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of the terminal (When we take your terminal for repair etc., as we cannot take it with data remained, you are required to erase the data by yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data, contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service providers. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.

- If the data in the IC card or the docomo mini UIM card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

- If the terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.

[*1] Data saved in the IC card built in the Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal (including electronic money or point values)

[*2] Data saved in the docomo mini UIM card (including electronic money or point values, and excluding phonebook data and SMS data)

Using "おサイフケータイ対応サービス (Osaifu-Keitai compatible service)"

1 From the Home screen, tap [⌗] then tap [Osaifu-Keitai].

2 Select a service you want to use from a service list.
   - Download an application compatible with service site or service.
   - You can exchange data with an IC card reader only by holding ⌒ mark over the card reader.

❖**Information**
- If you do not make the initial setting for Osaifu-Keitai in the initial setting for DOCOMO services (P.39), the initial setting screen appears in Step 2. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- You can scan and write data to or from an IC card reader without activating Osaifu-Keitai compatible application.
- The function is available even if the terminal is off, but it is not available when the battery is not attached. Even if the battery is attached, it may not be available if the terminal is off for a long while or battery is low.
- You can use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service even when the PIN code cannot be unlocked or PIN locked.
- Note that when you do not subscribe sp-mode, some functions of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service may not be available.

Using "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)"

1 From the Home screen, tap [⌗], then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

2 [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings]▶[Reader/Writer, P2P]▶[OK].
   - "Reader/Writer, P2P" and "Android Beam" are marked.
   - NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function is enabled, and [N] appears in the status bar.

3 Hold the ⌒ mark over a device with the NFC module or a smart poster.

Notes on holding the mark over the other device such as a reader or device with the NFC module
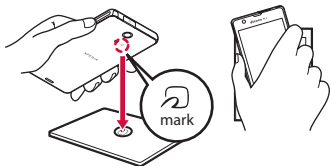
- When holding ⊇ mark over the other device, make sure not to hit the terminal strongly.
- Hold the ⊇ mark over parallel to the center of the other device.
- Slowly put the terminal close to the other device when holding ⊇ mark.
- If ⊇ mark is not recognized even when holding over the device, try lifting the terminal slightly, or moving the terminal back, forth and around.
- If there are metal objects between ⊇ mark and the other device, scanning may be failed. And note that putting the terminal in a case or cover may affect communication performance.

Locking Osaifu-Keitai function

Use "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" settings to restrict the use of Osaifu-Keitai function and related services.
- NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is different from screen lock for the terminal, SIM card lock.

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

2 Tap [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings]▶[NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock].

3 Enter a password, then tap [Next].
- When using "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" for the first time, enter a password to set. Set security question and answer in case you forget the pattern following the onscreen instructions.
- Osaifu-Keitai function is locked, and 🔒 or 🔒 is displayed in the status bar.

❖**Information**
- Note that you cannot cancel "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", if the battery runs out while "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set. Be careful about remaining battery level. If you cancel "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", charge the terminal before canceling.
- You need to unlock to use Osaifu-Keitai menu while "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set.
- "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" password is not be deleted even if you reset the terminal.

- If you forget the password for "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", tap ![icon] in the "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings" screen and tap [Forget password?], then answer the secret question that you set when setting the password.
- When unlocking "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", insert the same docomo mini UIM card as the one inserted when "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" was set, then unlock.

■ **NFC**

NFC is an abbreviation for Near Field Communication and a short range wireless communication method of international standard defined by ISO (International Organization for Standardization). You can use a contactless IC card function, Reader/Writer function (R/W), Peer-to-Peer communications function (P2P), etc.

iDアプリ (iD application)

"iD" is a convenient electronic money by credit clearance scheme. You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently only by holding Osaifu-Keitai with credit information set or the iD-compatible card over the IC card reader in stores. Because up to 2 types of credit information can be registered in Osaifu-Keitai, you can use them according to the benefits, etc. It also supports cashing, depending on the card issuer.

- To use iD with Osaifu-Keitai, subscribing to a card issuer that supports iD, settings for iD application are required.

- The charges required for iD service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- For using the application, a packet communication charge is applied.
- A packet communication charge for oversea use differs from the one in Japan.
- For details on iD, refer to iD website. http://id-credit.com/ (In Japanese only)

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained to mobile phones. It can be obtained from the IC card reader or site as store information, coupon ticket, etc. Obtained ToruCa is saved to the "ToruCa" app. Use the "ToruCa" app to display, search or update.
For details on ToruCa, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]".

❖**Information**
- For obtaining, displaying or updating ToruCa, a packet communication charge may be applied.
- Some ToruCa provided to i-mode terminal may not be obtained/displayed/updated.
- Depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider), the following functions may not be available.
  - Obtaining/Updating from the IC card reader, sharing ToruCa, moving to microSD card, copying/displaying map

- Some ToruCa which can be displayed in a map from ToruCa (details) may not be displayed in a map from the ToruCa list depending on the IP settings.
- While "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set, you cannot obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader.
- If you mark 重複チェック (Duplication check), obtaining the same ToruCa redundantly is not available. To obtain the same ToruCa redundantly, unmark 重複チェック (Duplication check).
- When you send ToruCa attaching to email, it is sent in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- Depending on email application, ToruCa received via the emails may not be saved.
- Depending on browser, ToruCa cannot be obtained.
- When ToruCa is moved/copied to the microSD card, it is moved/copied in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- You may not be able to obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader, if you do not make initial setting for Osaifu-Keitai.

Mobacas

Mobacas is a broadcasting service for smartphones. You can use 2 watching styles : "Real Time" (broadcasting in real time style) that allows you to watch programs in real time and "Shift Time" (broadcasting in storage style) that allows you to enjoy comic, novels, music, games, etc. as well as movies and dramas anytime and anywhere. Also, you can enjoy new broadcasting services including social service collaborated services using the communication function of the terminal.

For details on Mobacas, refer to the Mobacas broadcast station (NOTTV) website.

NOTTV　http://www.nottv.jp/ (in Japanese only)

Using Mobacas

- A separate pay-TV subscription to the Mobacas broadcast station (NOTTV) is required to use Mobacas.
- You cannot receive and watch broadcasts without the docomo mini UIM card being attached the terminal.
- Mobacas is a broadcasting service provided in Japan.
- Using Shift Time mode requires sufficient memory in the internal storage.

Broadcast wave and service area

The radio wave received via Mobacas differs from that of received via Xi/FOMA service and 1Seg. For this reason, the signal cannot be received at places where the Mobacas broadcast does not reach or while broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the terminal is outside or inside the Xi/FOMA service area.

Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the terminal is inside the area of Mobacas broadcasting service.

- Places that are far from the base station that sends signal
- Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings where airwaves are interrupted by geography or buildings
- Tunnel, underground or far back from a building where airwaves are weak or do not reach

Mobacas/1Seg antenna

- Pull out the Mobacas/1Seg antenna thoroughly until it fixed.
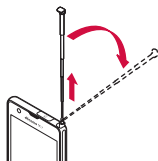
- Mobacas/1Seg antenna can be rotated 360 degrees. Rotate it toward a direction for good signal reception.
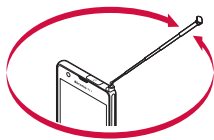
❖**Information**

- To operate Mobacas/1Seg antenna, be careful about the followings.
  - To change the direction of Mobacas/1Seg antenna, hold around the root of Mobacas/1Seg antenna and confirm the direction.
  - For stowing, shorten Mobacas/1Seg antenna and direct it straight and then stow it with careful attention to the orientation of top of Mobacas/1Seg antenna.

Improving reception status

- Fully extending the Mobacas/1Seg antenna and changing the antenna direction or moving to other location may improve signal reception.

Watching Mobacas

Watching programs/contents

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦ and [NOTTV].
- A home screen of NOTTV appears.
- When you activate for the first time, a terms for use appears. Tap [同意する (Agree)] to perform initial settings automatically. Perform the initial settings in a place with good communication environment.
- When a guidance etc. appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

2 Tap a thumbnail of program/content.

❖**Information**
- When watching Real Time program, you can select channels by flicking the screen left or right.
- To view in full-screen, turn the terminal sideways or on the portrait screen, tap an image of program/content and tap ▣.
  * Viewing structure of content differs depending on program/content.

- Tap [データ (Data)] to display a data broadcasting window (only in portrait view).
- Tap [ソーシャル (Social)] to display timeline related to program/content (only in portrait screen).
- Tap [インフォ (Info)] to display program details (only in portrait view).
- While watching, press ◁▷ to adjust sound volume.
- To set subtitle or audio, tap ▤ and [設定 (Settings)]▶[表示・音声 (Display/audio)].
- Some Mobacas programs/contents can be output to TV by MHL connection. For connecting, see "Connecting to other devices" (P.247).

Searching for a program/content

There are various methods for searching for programs/contents in the application.

Searching from program table (Real Time)

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦ and [NOTTV].

2 Tap [Program guide].
- Real Time program guide appears. To display Shift Time program guide, tap [シフトタイム (Shift Time)].
- Tap a current broadcasting program to switch to a watching screen of selected program.

Searching by conditions

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦ and [NOTTV].

2 Tap ▤ and tap [検索・ジャンル別 (Search/by genre)].

3 Enter a keyword to search or tap a genre you want to search for.

Reserving receiving a program/ content (Shift Time)

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦ and [NOTTV].

2 Tap [番組表 (Program guide)]▶[シフトタイム (Shift Time)].
   • A list of programs/contents to be broadcasted appears.

3 Tap a program/content you want to reserve.
   • A detail screen of program/content appears.

4 Tap [予約する (Reserve)].

❖**Information**
• Programs/contents may not be received in the following cases : when the power is off while a program/content is broadcasted, when the battery is low, when the terminal is in a poor reception area such as out of the Mobacas service area etc., available memory space in the internal storage is low.
• Programs/contents temporarily saved in the internal storage can be watched/used only on the terminal.
• When expiration date has passed for programs/ contents, they are automatically deleted from the internal storage. You can also delete programs/ contents manually before the expiration date.
• Programs/contents may be automatically reserved even when you have not reserved (自動受信 (Automatic reservation)).
• You can disable the automatic reservation function.
• Depending on the signal reception, content data may not be received. In that case, packet communication is automatically used to compliment data (自動コンテンツ補完 (Auto contents complement)).
• You can disable the auto contents complement function.

Settings Mobacas

You can set for view, audio, content reception, etc.

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦ and [NOTTV].**

2 **Tap ▐ and [Settings].**

表示・音声 (Display/audio)	字幕表示 (Display subtitles)	Set display subtitles.
	文字スーパー表示 (Telop display)	Set the telop display to on/off.
	音声 (Audio)	Switch main/sub audio sound.

自動処理 (Auto process)	自動受信 (Auto reception)	Set the automatic reception of content or program guide to on/off.
	おすすめのリセット (Reset recommendation)	Reset recommendation.
	番組・コンテンツ情報取得 (Acquire program/content information)	Set a time zone for acquiring programs/contents list information.
	自動コンテンツ補完 (Auto contents complement)	Set whether to automatically complement data using packet communication when contents are not completely received because of the reception status of broadcast wave etc.
	利用ログ送信 (Send log)	Set log sending to on/off.
	自動ライセンス取得 (Auto license acquisition)	Set whether to automatically acquire licenses of contents.
	ペアレンタルコントロール (Parental control)	Restrict usage of programs/contents according to age.

ブラウザ (Browser)	Cookie	Set Cookie to on/off.
	Cookieを削除 (Clear Cookie)	Delete saved Cookie.
	放送用保存領域消去 (Delete saved broadcast data)	Delete received broadcast data in the saving area.
	データ放送表示 (Display data broadcasting)	Enable/disable display of data broadcasting.
	再読込 (Reloading)	Reload data.
	文字コード変換 (Character code conversion)	Convert character codes.
履歴 (History)		Display history.
ステータスバー (Status bar)	放送中番組を表示 (Display broadcasting program)	Set whether to display a broadcasting program on the status bar.
機種変更 (Model change)		Make necessary settings in case of model change.

1Seg

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service that allows mobile devices to receive broadcasted data along with images and sounds. In addition, interactive service using communication function of mobile devices and receiving detailed information are available.
For details on "1Seg" service, refer to the following website.
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/

Using 1Seg

1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc. A communication fee for receiving video picture and sound is not required. Contact NHK for details on your NHK viewing fees. There are 2 types of information displayed in the data broadcasting area: "Data broadcasting" and "Data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed using airwave along with images and sounds; while "Data broadcasting site" is displayed by connecting to a site provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc., using information of data broadcasting.

For viewing "Data broadcasting site", etc., packet communication fees are charged.

- Some sites require information fees.
- ToruCa may be automatically saved while watching 1Seg program. For acquiring detailed information of saved ToruCa, packet communication charge is applied.

Airwaves

1Seg is one of the broadcast services and a different type of radio waves (airwaves) from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, regardless of whether you are in or out of Xi service or FOMA service area, it cannot be received where airwaves do not reach or during broadcasting interruptions.
Also, even in a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area, reception condition may be poor or reception may be unavailable in the following places:

- A place far from the tower that the airwaves are sent from
- Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings where airwaves are interrupted by geography or buildings
- Tunnel, underground or far back from a building where airwaves are weak or do not reach

Fully extending the Mobacas/1Seg antenna and moving to other location may improve signal reception.

Initial settings for 1Seg

When you use 1Seg for the first time, select an area to make channel setting. After channel setting is done, 1Seg programs can be received.

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦ and tap [1Seg].**

2 **Tap [Area Select] to select region, prefecture and locality.**
   - The terminal searches for available channels. When the searching is complete, a channel list appears.

3 **Tap a channel you want to watch.**
   - 1Seg watching screen appears.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, tap [Auto] in Step 2 to set channels.

Watching 1Seg program

1 From the Home screen, tap [icon] and tap [1Seg].

- 1Seg watching screen appears. Tap an image or subtitle to temporarily view information such as program name.

■ 1Seg watching screen

**1Seg watching screen
(with data broadcasting)**

1Seg watching screen (full screen)

ⓐ Remote control number, broadcasting station and program information
ⓑ Image
ⓒ Subtitle
ⓓ Channel selection key : Select channel, display operation key to display channel list etc.

ⓔ Reception signal level
ⓕ View optional menu
ⓖ Data broadcasting : Display data broadcasting content.
ⓗ Remote control for data broadcasting : Display operation keys for data broadcasting such as Back, Move focus, Select focus, etc.
ⓘ Record icon
ⓙ Switch of screen view (full-screen/with data broadcasting)

❖**Information**

- While watching 1Seg, press [icon] to adjust volume.
- You can watch 1Seg program in the portrait view or landscape view. To set the screen orientation to switch between landscape and portrait view automatically according to the terminal orientation, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Auto rotate].
- To switch channels for watching, operate any of the followings.
  - Tap the channel selection key
  - On the 1Seg watching screen, flick an image or subtitle left or right.
  - On the 1Seg watching screen, touch and hold an image or subtitle to display the channel list and then select a channel
- On the portrait view screen, tap a data broadcasting to display the remote control for data broadcasting. To display the channel selection key or recording icon again, tap an image or subtitle.
- You cannot exit 1Seg even if you tap [icon] to return to the Home screen. If 1Seg remains activated, the battery may be consumed quickly. To exit 1Seg, tap [icon] while watching 1Seg.

- It may take a time to acquire image data or broadcasted data when you activate 1Seg or change channels due to characteristic of digital broadcasting.
- According to the airwave condition, image or sound may be interrupted or stopped.
- If the terminal receives a call while watching 1Seg, 1Seg is interrupted and resumes after the call ends.

Watching data broadcasting

For data broadcasting, you can view various information by following the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
- To watch data broadcasting, call charge or packet communication charge is not required. If you use additional services of data broadcasting, etc. via packet communication, packet communication charge is applied.

Setting 1Seg

You can set 1Seg watching screen, data broadcasting and initialize.

Using optional menu

You can record 1Seg, switch caption display, etc.

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap .

| Program guide | Display a program guide (P.150). |

Recorded programs		Display recorded file list (P.150).
Reservation list		Reserve recording or watching programs or display failed reservation list (P.149).
TV Link		Display a TV link list screen (P.149).
Settings	Data Broadcasting settings	Set whether to check communication or to use the location information or the terminal information, or clear the broadcasting station memory.
	Sleep Timer	Make a timer setting to end 1Seg watching.
	Subtitle/Sound	Enable/disable subtitle display and set subtitle language and main/sub sound.
	Change area	Change broadcasting area.
Tune service		You can select a sub-channel when several programs (services) are broadcasted for separated sub-channels in a channel.

Saving channels in the current location

Available channels vary depending on the area (broadcasting service area) you are using in.

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap [icon].

2 Tap [Settings]▶[Change area]▶[Empty].

3 Tap [Auto].
- The terminal searches for available channels. When the searching is complete, a channel list appears.

4 Tap a channel you want to watch.
- 1Seg watching screen appears.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, tap [Area Select] in Step 3 then select your area to save channels.

Changing a broadcasting area

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap [icon].

2 Tap [Settings]▶[Change area].

3 Select a registered area.
- Channels are switched to the ones for the selected area.

❖**Information**
- By touching and holding the area registered in Step 3, you can display details, set area information, refresh channels, rename area or clear settings.

Changing numbers for TV remote

Change TV remote number assigned to each broadcasting station. Each broadcasting station can be called up via the corresponding TV remote number.

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), touch and hold an image.
- A channel list appears.

2 Tap a broadcasting station to change the remote control number.

3 Touch and hold a number of remote control you want to set to.

4 Tap [Register channel].
- If you select a number of remote control which is already assigned to another broadcasting station, tap [YES].

❖**Information**
- To delete set broadcasting stations, touch and hold a broadcasting station to delete in Step 2, then [Delete channel]▶Tap [YES].

Using TV link

For some data broadcasting programs, link information to related websites (TV link) is displayed. Save TV links to connect to related websites later.

Saving TV links

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (with data broadcasting) (P.146), select TV link to store.
 • After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

Displaying TV links

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap 　.

2 Tap [TV Link].
 • A TV link list screen appears.

3 Select a TV link.
 • When selecting a link content or HTML content, tap [Yes].

❖**Information**
• Some TV links have period of validity. Out of date TV links are no longer available.

Viewing/Deleting details of TV link

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap 　.

2 Tap [TV Link] and touch and hold a TV link.

Property		Display details for registered information such as title, description, expiration date, etc.
Delete	Delete one	Delete a stored TV link.
	Delete all	Delete all stored TV links.

❖**Information**
• Alternatively, on the TV link list screen, tap 　 to delete all.

Reservation of recording/viewing TV program

Reserve recording/viewing TV program.

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap 　.

2 Tap [Reservation list] and tap 　.

3 Tap [Manual].

4 Tap [Viewing reservation]/ [Recording reservation].

5 Set a program name, channel, start time, end time, etc. and tap 　, then tap [YES].

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, tap [From Program guide] in Step 3, you can reserve recording/watching.

Recording 1Seg

Record images, sound, captions or data broadcasting while displaying.

1 **On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap ⬤ to start recording.**

2 **On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap ⬜ to end recording.**

❖**Information**
- Maximum savable recorded data file size is 2GB, and maximum recordable time is approximately 640 minutes in a row.
  Items can be saved up to 99.
- Recorded data is saved on a microSD card. Recording is not available if a microSD card is not attached.
- When you use the microSD card from another application while recording, recording may fail.

Playing a recorded program.

1 **On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap ⋮.**

2 **Tap [Recorded programs].**

3 **Tap a program you want to play.**

❖**Information**
- Touch and hold a program to change or delete title etc.
- Tap ⋮ on the recorded file list screen to set play mode, select/delete all, display remaining memory space, etc.

Using program guide

1 **On the 1Seg watching screen (P.146), tap ⋮.**

2 **Tap [Program guide].**
- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

FM radio

You can listen to the FM radio with the terminal. Tuning can be made automatically or manually, and you can register your favorite channels to Favorites. To use FM radio, use a commercially available earphone set or headphone. They work as antenna.

Searching and registering channels

1 **Connect an earphone set or headphone to the terminal.**

2 **From the Home screen, tap [icon], then tap [FM radio].**
   - FM radio screen appears and selecting channel starts automatically. The search ends when radio waves are received.

3 **Tap [icon] / [icon] to select channel.**
   - You can select channel by flicking the screen left and right.

4 **Tap [icon].**

5 **Enter a name, select a color, then tap [Save].**
   - The frequency bands of selected channels are registered to Favorites.

6 **To stop the FM radio, tap [icon].**

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, on the FM radio screen, tap [icon] and [Search for channels] to search.
- Up to 8 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered as a favorite name.
- You can return to the Home screen to perform another operation while listening to FM radio in the background. To return to the FM radio screen, from the Home screen, tap [icon] then tap [FM radio], or drag the status bar downward and tap [FM radio].
- If you cannot receive Japanese FM radio programs because the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted etc., tap [icon] on the FM radio screen, then tap [Set radio region]▶[Japan]. For using FM radio, check your area.

■ FM radio screen
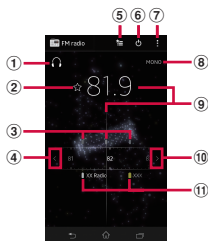
ⓐ Play in speaker/Play in handsfree
ⓑ Save/edit Favorites
ⓒ Channel point displayed in a good radio wave condition
ⓓ Search channels to the left
ⓔ Show Favorites
ⓕ On/Off of FM radio
ⓖ View optional menu

⑧ Monaural/stereo effect
⑨ Broadcasting station now listening
⑩ Search channels to the right
⑪ Channel assigned to favorite

Switching the speaker and handsfree device

1 On the FM radio screen, tap 🎧 / 🔊.
   • The sound output is switched to the speaker/handsfree device.

Using earphone set

Use a commercially available earphone set, stereo earphone with microphone or headphone connecting to the terminal.

1 Connect an earphone set or headphone to the headset jack of the terminal.
   • Some earphones with microphone are not available.

Camera

You can shoot still pictures and videos by tapping the shutter icon (start shooting icon/stop icon) or shooting screen or using the camera key (📷). Shooting still pictures is available in the portrait and landscape screen. Landscape screen is good for shooting videos. For shooting with Sweep Panorama, always hold the camera horizontally. Still pictures and videos are saved automatically in the internal storage or a microSD card.

Before using the camera

• All pictures or videos that you capture on the terminal are stored into the internal storage or a microSD card. When saving to a microSD card, attach a microSD card before using the camera.
• If you use microSD card with an i-mode compatible terminal, photos and videos shot by the terminal cannot be shown.

- Avoid copyright infringements when you handle photos, videos, or sound recorded using the terminal, e.g. copy/edit. In addition, avoid rights infringements of portraits by using these photos without consent, altering them or by other means. Note that capturing or recording a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition may be prohibited even if for personal use.

■ About the Copyright and Portrait rights
Objects, such as movies, still images, and sounds, recorded using the terminal are prohibited by the copyright law from use without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law. Also, using or transformation of other person's portrait or name without his or her permission may violate the portrait right. When you present recorded images or sounds in a public place such as on an Internet home page, make sure to be aware of the copyright and portrait right. Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use. Transmission of images related to copyright or beyond the scope provided in the copyright law is not available.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.
In the event that you cause the public any trouble using the terminal, you may be punished under law or regulations (for example, nuisance prevention ordinance).

Note on Sweep Panorama

- In the following cases, Sweep Panorama does not work properly.
  - Shooting a moving object
  - Shooting the main object that is too close to the camera
  - Shooting an object with repetition of the same pattern such as a sky, beach, grass, etc.
  - Shooting a big object
  - Shooting an object with constantly changing pattern such as a wave, waterfall, etc.
- If shooting angle does not reach the required value for Sweep Panorama within a certain period of time, the part which was not taken is recorded in gray.
  To avoid this, move the camera faster when shooting.
- Because two or more images are joined together, joints may not recorded smoothly.
- Images may be blurred or may not be taken in a dark scene.
- Under the flickering light source such as a fluorescent light, you may not be able to shoot properly since brightness or color balance of joined image may be unstable.
- If brightness, color balance, focus point of whole image, etc. to be shot with Sweep Panorama are extremely different from those of the focused image, image may not be shot properly.

- In the following cases, Sweep Panorama shooting may be interrupted.
  - Moved the camera too fast/too slow
  - Blurred too much
  - Moved the camera in the opposite direction of the shooting

Shooting screen and key operation

■ Still picture shooting screen/video recording screen
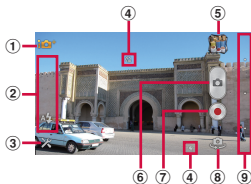
Still picture shooting screen
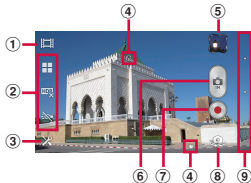
Video recording screen

ⓐ Capturing mode icon (P.155)
ⓑ Display area of icons showing selected settings

ⓒ Icons showing set items
ⓓ Display area of status icons showing selected settings
ⓔ Recent shooting history
  - Flick a thumbnail of shooting history on the shooting screen to the left of the screen (up when in vertical screen mode) to display the last 5 items.
  - Tap a thumbnail to open viewing/playback screen for still pictures and videos.
  - Touch and hold a thumbnail to display the following icons (except for continuous shoot).
    : View playback screen of photos and videos
    : Share
    : Delete
  - For thumbnails of pictures continuously taken, number of pictures continuously taken is also indicated. Tap to open the list screen for pictures continuously taken.
ⓕ Shutter icon (still picture)
ⓖ Start/Stop recording icon (video)
ⓗ Switching to the front camera icon
ⓘ Navigation bar

❖**Information**
- Press and hold ⬚ for over a second to shake the terminal and activate the camera.
- On the shooting screen, pinch-out/in or press ⬚ to zoom in/out. When capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Sweep Panorama", "Front camera" or "Front video", zoom is not available.
- To end the camera, tap Navigation bar, then tap ⬚.

Changing capturing mode

1 Press and hold [📷] for over a second.
   - The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then select capturing mode.

Capturing mode icon

■ Capturing mode
   [📷⁺] Superior auto
   The camera detects its state such as fixed (🐕) and moving (🏃) and determines most suitable scene effect. When the state is detected, an icon appears. When scene is recognized, scene icon and scene name appear.
   "Superior auto", "Normal", "Video camera", "Burst", "Picture effect", "Sweep Panorama", "Scene selection", "Front camera", or "Front video" is recognized.
   [📷] Normal
   A standard shooting mode.
   [📹] Video camera
   Record videos (P.163).
   [📷] Burst
   Pictures can be shot continuously (P.172).

[🎨] Picture effect
Apply various picture effects to pictures (P.171).
[🖼] Sweep Panorama
Shoot panoramic image with wide angle (P.172).
[SCN] Scene selection
Set programmed scenes (P.157).
[📷] Front camera
Shoot pictures using the front camera (P.169).
[📹] Front video
Record videos using the front camera (P.169).

Shooting still pictures

Tap the shutter icon (📷) or shooting screen, or use the camera key ([📷]) to shoot still pictures. Shot still pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage or a microSD card.

1 Press and hold [📷] for over a second.
   - The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

■ Shooting with the shutter icon

Tap ⦿ on the shooting/recording screen.

- To shoot still pictures using auto-focus function, touch and hold ⦿ and release your finger when the focus frame turns blue and sound beeps. A picture is shot as soon as you release the finger. If the focus frame does not appear, auto-focus does not operate correctly.

■ Shooting with "Touch capture"

Set "Touch capture", then tap around a displayed frame on the shooting screen.

- To set "Touch capture", on the recording screen, tap 🔧, then tap [Touch capture]▶[On].
- To shoot still pictures using auto-focus function, tap the screen and release your finger, and then the focus frame turns blue and a picture is shot. If the focus frame does not appear, auto-focus does not operate correctly.

■ Using the camera key (📷)

Press 📷 on the shooting screen

- Even when "Touch capture" (P.162) is set to "On", pressing 📷 shoots a picture.

- To shoot still pictures using auto-focus function, press 📷 halfway and when the focus frame turns blue and sound beeps, press 📷 all the way until it stops. If the focus frame does not appear, auto-focus does not operate correctly.

❖**Information**

- When you connect a commercially available earphone set or other Bluetooth device, shutter sound may be softer.

Changing the shooting settings

1 Press and hold 📷 for over a second.

- The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 On the shooting screen, tap 🔧, then tap item to set.

- Several setting icons are displayed on the shooting screen in advance. The displayed setting icons change depending on the setting conditions.
- When capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Burst", "Picture effect" or "Sweep Panorama", tap the setting item icon displayed on the shooting screen to change the setting.
- For setting items and icons, see "Still camera setting" (P.157).

3 **Tap an option in the selected setting.**

- If you change setting options, icons displayed on the shooting screen change to the set items.

❖**Information**

- To replace setting item icons displayed on the shooting screen, tap ▨ on the shooting screen and touch and hold a setting item and drag it to a dotted frame.
- To delete a setting item icon displayed on the shooting screen, touch and hold an icon and drag it to 🗑 displayed in the center of the screen.
- When capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Burst", "Picture effect" or "Sweep Panorama", a setting item icon cannot be replaced or deleted.
- ▨ or capturing mode icons (P.155) displayed on the shooting screen cannot be moved or deleted.

Still camera setting

■ Scenes

Use Scenes to quickly set up the camera for various scene conditions.

The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Scene selection".

😊 Soft skin

Shoot a picture making human skin look smoother.

😊 Soft snap

Settings are optimized to give brighter and warmer skin tones.

😊 Anti motion blur

Reduce blur without flash when taking portraits indoors.

🏔 Landscape

Shoot landscape depicting trees with vivid color and focusing on distant objects.

🌄 Backlight correction HDR

Correct backlight with the high dynamic range imaging function.

😊 Night portrait

Suitable for shooting persons against the nightscape background. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

🌙 Night scene

Shoot a crisp and clear night scene. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

🌙 Hand-held twilight

Shoot a crisp and clear night scene reducing noise.

📷 High sensitivity

Reduce blur without flash even when shooting under poor lighting condition.

🍴 Gourmet

Shoot clear images making food look delicious.

🐾 Pet

Suitable for shooting pets.

Beach

Reconstruct beach scene brightly and vividly.

Snow

Reconstruct snow scene brightly and vividly.

Party

Shoot an indoor picture creating good atmosphere of indoor lighting. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

Sports

To shoot fast-moving object, shorten exposure time to minimize motion blurring.

Document

Use for shooting text or graphics. It allows to capture a clear, bright, and easy to read text.

Fireworks

Shoot a crisp and clear images of fireworks. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

■ Resolution

Set the resolution for shooting. An image with a higher resolution requires more memory.

13MP/ 12MP

13 megapixel (4128×3096) or 12 megapixel (3920×2940) image size with 4:3 aspect ratio. Suitable for viewing on a normal size screen or printing in high resolution.
When you set the capturing mode (P.155) to any of the followings, the resolution is set to 12MP.

- Superior auto
- Normal (when "HDR" is set to "On")
- Scene selection (when "Backlight correction HDR" is set)

9MP

9 megapixel (3920×2204) image size with 16:9 aspect ratio. A high resolution wide-screen format. Suitable for viewing on a normal size screen or printing in high resolution.

5MP

5 megapixel (2592×1944) image size with 4:3 aspect ratio. Suitable for viewing on normal size screen.

2MP

2 megapixel (1920×1080) image size with 16:9 aspect ratio. Suitable for viewing on wide-screen.

VGA

VGA format (640×480) with 4:3 aspect ratio.

■ Flash

Set the flash to light or not when lighting conditions are poor or in backlight.

A₄ Auto

Turn on the flash automatically according to the brightness.

⚡ Fill flash

Always turn on the flash regardless of the brightness.

👁 Red-eye reduction

Reduce red-eye effect caused by the flash.

⊗ Off

The flash does not turn on.

• Sometimes still picture quality can be better without flash. When you do not turn on the flash, use the self-timer to avoid blurring still picture.

■ Self-timer

Shoot when a set time elapses after the shutter icon or shooting screen is tapped or 🔲 is pressed.

Use it to shoot self-portraits, or group pictures where everyone can be in the picture. You can also use the self-timer to avoid camera shake.

⏱ On (10 sec.)

Shutter clicks 10 seconds after tapping or pressing 🔲.

⏱ On (2 sec.)

Shutter clicks 2 seconds after tapping or pressing 🔲.

⏱ Off

Shutter clicks right after tapping or pressing 🔲.

■ Smile Shutter

Shoot faces at the moment they smile (P.170).

😁 Big smile

Shoot when a big smile is detected.

😊 Average smile

Shoot when a smile is detected.

🙂 Small smile

Shoot when even a tiny smile is detected.

😐 Off

Cancel smile detection function.

■ Quick launch

Set behavior when using Quick launch (P.169).

📷 Launch and capture

Activate the camera to shoot a picture immediately.

📷 Launch only (still camera)

Activate the camera to display shooting screen.

🎥 Launch and record movie

Activate the camera to record a video immediately.

🎥 Launch only (movie camera)

Activate the camera to display recording video screen.

■ Off
Do not use Quick launch.

■ Focus mode
Set focus controls.
The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Normal".

Single autofocus
The camera automatically focuses on the center of the shooting screen.
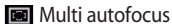
Multi autofocus
The camera automatically focuses on several points on the shooting screen. For places which are focused on by tapping the shutter icon or shooting screen, or pressing ⬜, white focus frames turn to blue.

Face detection
Detect a face to focus (P.170).

Touch focus
Tap an object on the shooting screen. The focus frame moves onto the tapped place.

Object tracking
The camera chases an object and focuses on it.

■ Exposure value
Adjusting brightness with exposure value. The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Normal".
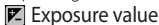
Exposure value
Drag the bar to adjust the exposure value.

■ HDR
Set the high dynamic range function.
On
Shoot with the high dynamic range imaging function.
Off
Cancel the high dynamic range function.

■ White balance
Adjust the color balance to the light source. The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Normal".

Auto
Adjust the color balance automatically to the light source.

Incandescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like incandescent bulb.

Fluorescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like fluorescent.

Daylight
Adjust the color balance for a sunny place.

Cloudy
Adjust the color balance for a cloudy sky or shaded area.

■ ISO

Set ISO sensitivity. Shoot clear picture reducing blur even in a place where lightning is poor.

The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Normal".

ISO Auto
Set to the appropriate sensitivity from "100" to "1600".

ISO 100
Set sensitivity to 100.

ISO 200
Set sensitivity to 200.

ISO 400
Set sensitivity to 400.

ISO 800
Set sensitivity to 800.

ISO 1600
Set sensitivity to 1600.

■ Metering

Measure the brightness on the shooting screen to determine a well-balanced exposure automatically.

The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Normal".

Center
Put emphasis at the center of the shooting screen and measure photometry at whole view finder to adjust the exposure.

Average
Adjust the exposure based on the brightness of the whole shooting screen.

Spot
Measure photometry only at the center of the shooting screen to adjust the exposure.

■ Image stabilizer

Compensate for photo blur caused by small movements of the hand when shooting.

On
Reduce blur.

Off
The stabilizer is not used.

■ Geotagging

Tag photos location information (geotag) for the shooting spot. Enable the location information service setting to add Geotag. For details on location information service, see "Location services" (P.181).

 On

Geotag (location information) is added to specify the shooting spot of the photo.

 Off

Shooting location cannot be viewed on a map.

- appears while acquiring location information. To pictures shot while acquiring location information, geotags are not added.

■ Auto upload

Automatically upload shot pictures to PlayMemories Online.

 Auto upload

Shot images are automatically uploaded. Tapping the icon opens the setting screen. Mark "PlayMemories Online" and follow the onscreen instructions.

■ Touch capture

Tap the shooting screen to shoot an image.

 On

Tap the shooting screen to shoot an image.

 Off

Tap the shutter icon to shoot.

- Even when "Touch capture" is set to "ON", pressing shoots a picture.

■ Data storage

Set the saving location for shot pictures.

 Internal storage

Save shot pictures in the internal storage.

 SD card

Save shot pictures in a microSD card.

■ Photo light

Use the photo light to shoot when lighting conditions are poor or in backlight. The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Burst" or "Sweep Panorama".

 On

The photo light turns on.

 Off

The photo light does not turn on.

■ Shooting direction

Set shooting direction for Sweep Panorama.
The setting is available only when the
capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Sweep
Panorama".

▣ Right

Shoot moving the camera from left to right.

▣ Left

Shoot moving the camera from right to left.

▣ Down

Shoot moving the camera downward.

▣ Up

Shoot moving the camera upward.

■ Burst speed

Set continuous shooting speed.
The setting is available only when the
capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Burst".

▣ High

Shoot at high speed and 1280×720 image
size with 16:9 aspect ratio.

▣ Middle

Shoot at medium speed and 3920×2204
image size with 16:9 aspect ratio.

▣ Low

Shoot at low speed and 1920×1080 image
size with 16:9 aspect ratio.

❖**Information**

- For available setting items when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Front camera", see "Front camera" (P.169).
- Some settings cannot be used in combination with one another.
- If you shoot pictures continuously with "Data storage" set to "SD card", dropping frames may occur depending on the writing speed of microSD card. For fully using the performance of continuous shooting with "High" or "Middle", set "Data storage" to "Internal storage".

Recording videos

Tap the start recording icon (●)/stop
recording icon (■), tap the recording screen,
or press 🔘 to start/stop recording a video.
Recorded videos are automatically saved in
the internal storage or a microSD card.

1 **Press and hold** 🔘 **for over a
second.**

2 **On the shooting screen, tap the
capturing mode icon (P.155), then
tap [Video camera].**

- The video recording screen (P.154) appears.

■ Recording with the start recording
icon/stop recording icon

On the recording screen, tap ● to start
recording, and tap ■ to stop recording.

■ Shooting with "Touch capture"
Set "Touch capture", then tap around a displayed frame on the recording screen to start recording, and tap the recording screen to stop recording.
- To set "Touch capture", on the recording screen, tap ☒, then tap [Touch capture]▶[On].

■ Using the camera key (⬜)
On the recording screen, tap ⬜ to start recording, and tap ⬜ to stop recording.
- Even when "Touch capture" (P.168) is set to "On", pressing ⬜ starts/stops recording a video.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, tap ● in Step 2 to start recording.
- Do not cover the microphone with fingers etc. when recording videos.
- When you connect a commercially available earphone set or other Bluetooth device, shutter sound may be softer.
- On the video recording screen (P.154) or while recording video, tap shutter icon to shoot still pictures.
  Shot image size varies by video resolution setting.
  Full HD/HD : 1 megapixel (1280×720) with 16:9 aspect ratio
  VGA : VGA (640×480) with 4:3 aspect ratio
  QVGA : QVGA (320×240) with 4:3 aspect ratio

Changing the recording settings

1. **Press and hold ⬜ for over a second.**

2. **On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then tap [Video camera].**
   - The video recording screen (P.154) appears.

3. **On the shooting screen, tap ☒, then tap item to set.**
   - Several setting icons are displayed on the shooting screen in advance. The displayed setting icons change depending on the setting conditions.
   - For setting items and icons, see "Video camera setting" (P.165).

4. **Tap an option in the selected setting.**
   - If you change setting options, icons displayed on the shooting screen change to the set items.

❖**Information**
- To replace setting item icons displayed on the recording screen, tap ☒ on the recording screen and touch and hold a setting item and drag it to a dotted frame.

- To delete a setting item icon displayed on the shooting screen, touch and hold an icon and drag it to 🗑 displayed in the center of the screen.
- 🎥 or capturing mode icons (P.155) displayed on the recording screen cannot be moved or deleted.

Video camera setting

■ Scenes
Use Scenes to quickly set up the camera for various scene conditions.

🎬 Off
Adjust color shade or brightness automatically.

📷 Soft snap
Settings are optimized to give brighter and warmer skin tones.

🏔 Landscape
Shoot landscape depicting trees with vivid color and focusing on distant objects.

🌙 Night
Shoot a crisp and clear night scene.

🏖 Beach
Reconstruct beach scene brightly and vividly.

❄ Snow
Reconstruct snow scene brightly and vividly.

🏃 Sports
To shoot fast-moving object, shorten exposure time to minimize motion blurring.

🎉 Party
Shoot an indoor picture creating good atmosphere of indoor lighting.

■ Video resolution
Set the resolution for recording. An image with a higher resolution requires more memory.

📺 Full HD
Full HD format (1920×1080) with 16:9 aspect ratio.
The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Video camera".

📺 HD
HD 720p format (1280×720) with 16:9 aspect ratio.
The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Video camera".

📺 VGA
VGA format (640×480) with 4:3 aspect ratio.

📺 QVGA
QVGA format (320×240) with 4:3 aspect ratio.
The setting is available only when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Front video".

■ Photo light
Use the photo light to shoot when lighting conditions are poor or in backlight.
 On
The photo light turns on.
 Off
The photo light does not turn on. Sometimes the video quality can be better without a photo light, even if lighting conditions are poor. Recording a good video without using the photo light requires a steady hand.

■ Self-timer
Start recording when a set time elapses after the start recording icon or shooting screen is tapped or 【 】 is pressed.
 On (10 sec.)
Recording starts 10 seconds after tapping or pressing 【 】.
 On (2 sec.)
Recording starts 2 seconds after tapping or pressing 【 】.
 Off
Recording starts right after tapping or pressing 【 】.
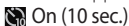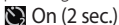
■ Quick launch
Set behavior when using Quick launch (P.169).
 Launch and capture
Activate the camera to shoot a picture immediately.
 Launch only (still camera)
Activate the camera to display shooting screen.
 Launch and record movie
Activate the camera to record a video immediately.
 Launch only (movie camera)
Activate the camera to display recording video screen.
 Off
Do not use Quick launch.

■ Focus mode
Set focus controls.
 Single autofocus
The camera automatically focuses on the center of the shooting screen.
 Face detection
Detect a face to focus (P.170).
 Object tracking
The camera chases an object and focuses on it.

■ Exposure value
Adjust brightness with Exposure value.
E Exposure value
Drag the bar to adjust the exposure value.

■ HDR Video
Set the high dynamic range function.
HDR On
Shoot with the high dynamic range imaging function.
HDR Off
Cancel the high dynamic range function.

■ White balance
Adjust the color balance to the light source.
WB Auto
Adjust the color balance automatically to the light source.
Incandescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like incandescent bulb.
Fluorescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like fluorescent.
Daylight
Adjust the color balance for a sunny place.
Cloudy
Adjust the color balance for a cloudy sky or shaded area.

■ Metering
Measure the brightness on the shooting screen to determine a well-balanced exposure automatically.
Center
Put emphasis at the center of the shooting screen and measure photometry at whole view finder to adjust the exposure.
Average
Adjust the exposure based on the brightness of the whole shooting screen.
Spot
Measure photometry only at the center of the shooting screen to adjust the exposure.

■ Image stabilizer
Compensate for movements of the camera while recording a video.
On
Reduce blur.
Off
The stabilizer is not used.

■ Geotagging
Tag videos location information (geotag) for the recording spot. Enable the location information service setting to add Geotag. For details on location information service, see "Location services" (P.181).

 On
Geotag (location information) is added to specify the recording spot of the video.

 Off
Recording location cannot be viewed on a map.

■ Microphone
Set whether to pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

 On
Pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

 Off
Do not pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

■ Touch capture
Tap the recording screen to start/stop recording a video.

 On
Tap the recording screen to start/stop recording a video.

 Off
Tap the start recording icon/stop recording icon to start/stop recording a video.

• Even when "Touch capture" is set to "On", pressing starts/stops recording a video.

■ Data storage
Set the saving location for recorded videos.

 Internal storage
Save recorded videos in the internal storage.

 SD card
Save recorded videos in a microSD card.

❖**Information**
• For available setting items when the capturing mode (P.155) is set to "Front video", see "Front camera" (P.169).
• Some settings cannot be used in combination with one another.

Front camera

Front camera allows you to shoot your own picture or video while watching the shooting screen.

1 Press and hold [📷] for over a second.
  • The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 Tap [😊] on the shooting/recording screen.

3 Shoot photo/video.
  • For information on how to shoot, see "Shooting still pictures" (P.155) or "Recording videos" (P.163).

❖**Information**
  • Alternatively, on the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then tap [Front camera]/[Front video] to switch to the Front camera/Front video camera.
  • For using Front camera, "Self-timer", "Smile Shutter", "Geotagging", "Auto upload", "Touch capture", "Data storage" can be set. Other "Still camera setting" (P.157) are not supported by Front camera.
    - Resolution for Front camera is "VGA". The resolution cannot be changed.
    - Some settings take over the camera settings set at the time when switching.

  • For using Front video camera, "Video resolution", "Self-timer", "Geotagging", "Microphone", "Touch capture", "Data storage" can be set. Other "Video camera setting" (P.165) are not supported by Front video camera.
    - Some settings take over the camera settings set at the time when switching.

Quick launch

Quick launch allows you to activate camera to shoot when using other application, or from the the unlock screen, the Home screen, etc.

❖**Information**
  • By default, on the unlock screen, tap [📷] to activate camera.
  • Only when "Set all to" or "Lock screen" in Preferred apps settings (P.215) to "Xperia™", and set the screen unlock method (P.219) to "Swipe/Touch", you can also activate the camera by dragging [📷] / [▤] left on the unlock screen.

1 Press and hold [📷] for over a second.
  • "Launch only (still camera)" to activate the camera is set by default.
  • For behavior when using Quick launch, make setting from the shooting screen. For details, see "Quick launch" (P.159).

Face detection

Use Face detection to focus on a face located away from the center. The camera detects up to 5 faces and selects 1 face for auto focus. The camera determines the most suitable face according to the balance of distance from the camera and from the center. A selected face is surrounded with a yellow frame and automatically focused on. You can select a face to focus on by tapping a frame.

Setting face detection

1 **Press and hold 📷 for over a second.**
   • The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 **On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then tap [Normal]/[Video camera].**

3 **On the shooting screen, tap 🏞 and [Focus mode]▶[Face detection].**

Shooting using face detection

1 **With Face detection set, point the camera at the object.**
   • Each detected face is framed (up to 5 faces).

2 **Tap the frame you want to focus on or let the camera select which face to focus on without tapping.**
   • A yellow frame shows the face in focus.

3 **Shoot photo/video.**
   • For information on how to shoot, see "Shooting still pictures" (P.155) or "Recording videos" (P.163).

Smile Shutter

Smile shutter allows you to capture a face just as it smiles. The camera detects up to 5 faces and selects 1 face for smile shutter and auto focus. A selected face is surrounded with a yellow frame and when the selected face smiles, the frame turns to blue and the camera automatically takes a photo.

Setting smile shutter

1 **Press and hold 📷 for over a second.**
   • The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 **On the shooting screen, tap 🖼, then tap [Smile Shutter].**

3 **Select smile level for the smile shutter.**

Taking a photo using smile shutter

1 **Set smile shutter, and point the camera at the object.**
   • Each detected face is framed (up to 5 faces).
   • The camera selects which face to focus on. A yellow frame shows the face in focus.

2 **The camera automatically takes the photo when a face in focus smiles.**
   • Shot pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage or a microSD card.
   • If no smile is detected, operate the steps in "Shooting still pictures" (P.155) to shoot a picture.

Picture effect

Picture effect allows you to shoot pictures with various picture effects.

Setting picture effects

1 **Press and hold 📷 for over a second.**
   • The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 **On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then tap [Picture effect].**

3 **Select a picture effect.**
   • Select from "Nostalgic", "Miniature", "Vivid", "Filter", "Fisheye", "Sketch", "Partial color", "Harris shutter" or "Kaleidoscope".

❖**Information**
• On the screen for selecting a picture effect, press 🔲 to capture a screenshot.
• Resolution for the picture effect is "2MP". The resolution cannot be changed.

Taking a picture using picture effect

1 **Set picture effect, and point the camera at the object.**
   • Tap or pinch to change the picture effect setting.

2 **Press 🔲 .**
  - Alternatively, tap the shutter icon to shoot.
  - Shot pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage or a microSD card.

❖**Information**
- When you shoot a picture using picture effect, "Touch capture" (P.156) is not available.

Sweep Panorama

Use Sweep Panorama to shoot panoramic image with wide angle.
Aligning the white frame on the screen with the black frame, move the camera slowly toward the set shooting direction to shoot.

Setting Sweep Panorama

1 **Press and hold 🔲 for over a second.**
  - The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 **On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then tap [Sweep Panorama].**
  - Tap 🖼 / �La to set "Shooting direction" (P.163) or "Photo light" (P.162).

Shooting Sweep Panorama

1 **Set Sweep Panorama, point the camera at the object.**

2 **Shoot a still picture.**
  - For information on how to shoot pictures, see "Shooting still pictures" (P.155).
  - A white frame and big black frame appear on the shooting screen.

3 **Aligning the white frame with the black frame, slowly move the camera from left to right.**
  - If you change shooting direction, slowly move the camera in the set direction.
  - Shot pictures are saved automatically in the internal storage or a microSD card.

❖**Information**
- For shooting with Sweep Panorama, always hold the camera horizontally.

Continuous shooting

Use Burst to shoot a series of images.

Setting continuous shoot

1 **Press and hold 🔲 for over a second.**
  - The shooting screen (P.154) appears.

2 **On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.155), then tap [Burst].**
- Tap ![Mid] / ![off] to set "Burst speed" (P.163) or "Photo light" (P.162).

Shooting continuously

1 **Set Burst and point the camera to an object.**

2 **Press and hold ![camera] for over a second.**
- Pictures are continuously shot while ![camera] is pressed.
- Alternatively, touch and hold the shutter icon to operate. Pictures are continuously shot while the shutter icon is touched and held.
- Shot pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage or a microSD card.

❖**Information**
- "Touch capture" (P.156) is not available while Burst is set.

Playing multimedia content

Photos or videos that you took with the terminal or multimedia contents (music, photos, videos, etc.) saved in the internal storage or microSD card are viewed/played in applications such as "Media Player", "WALKMAN", "Album".
The terminal can play the following multimedia contents:

Type	File format
Sound	WAV (PCM, G.711) (.wav), AAC (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), AAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), eAAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), MP3 (.mp3), AMR-NB (.3gp), AMR-WB (.3gp), MIDI (SP-MIDI/GM/GML (.mid), XMF (.xmf), Mobile XMF 1.0 (.mxmf), RTTTL/RTX (.rtttl, .rtx), OTA (.ota), iMelody (.imy)), Ogg Vorbis (.ogg), FLAC (.flac), PIFF (.isma)
Still image	JPEG (.jpeg, .jpg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp), WEBP (.webp)
Video	H263 (.3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), H264 (.3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), MPEG4 (.3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), VP8 (.webm, .mkv), Xvid (.avi, .xvid, .mkv, .3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), WebM (.webm), AVI (.avi), PIFF (.ismv)

Copyright protected content

Avoid copyright infringements when you handle photos, videos, or sound recorded using the terminal, e.g. copy/edit. In addition, avoid rights infringements of portraits by using these photos without consent, altering them or by other means. Note that capturing or recording a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition may be prohibited even if for personal use.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Album

Images, photos and videos you took can be viewed and played. Also, use Media Go to transfer content to the terminal and to take content from an external device. For details, refer to "Connecting to a PC with microUSB cable" (P.242).

Viewing picture/video

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Album].
   - Album screen appears.
   - ▦ is displayed for files of pictures continuously shot.
   - ▶ is displayed for video files.

❖**Information**
- Depending on the number of saved images, it may take some times to load images.

■ Album screen
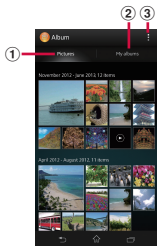
ⓐ Pictures tab
  • Pictures are displayed in a list of chronological order. Pinch-out/in on the screen to zoom in/out image.
ⓑ My albums tab
  • You can view albums in a list. You can view images with Geotagging attached on a map, saved images, pictures shot by the camera, albums synchronized on an online service, and images on a device registered in the Media server.
ⓒ View optional menu

Viewing pictures

1 Tap a picture on the Album screen.
  • The still picture viewing screen appears.
  • Tap the screen to display information such as shooting date, option menu icons, etc.
  • When you tap a file for pictures continuously taken, tap a picture in a row.

■ Still picture viewing screen
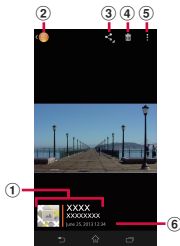
ⓐ Location information
  • For a geotagged image, a country name and a region name appear, and tap the icon to view the image on the map.
ⓑ Go back to the album screen
ⓒ View share menu (P.176)
ⓓ Delete image (P.176)
ⓔ View optional menu (P.176)
ⓕ Shooting date and time

❖**Information**
• Pinch-out/in on the picture viewing screen to zoom in/out image.
• The items vary depending on the selected file.

Playing video

1 Tap a video on the Album screen.
  • Video playback screen appears.

2 Tap ▶.
  • Video is played.

Operating image files

Sharing image files

You can share image files by attaching to Gmail or Email, uploading to Picasa or Google+, or sending to other devices via Bluetooth or infrared communication.

1 On the picture viewing screen/ video playing screen, tap the screen and tap 🔗.
   • Menu for sharing image file appears.
   • Tap [See all] to display all share menus.

2 Select sharing method for image file.
   • After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
• Different options may be shown or some items cannot be operated in some image files.
• To operate several files, on the album screen, tap 🔲 and [Select items] to select image files.
• When you select "Infrared" in Step 2, the Send via infrared message appears. Tap [OK] to start sending. For details on infrared communication, see "Using infrared communication" (P.233).
• For shared files, file sizes and file types are not particularly limited, but may be limited by the application to transfer. DRM content cannot be shared.

Deleting image files

1 On the picture viewing screen/ video playing screen, tap 🗑 and tap [Delete].
   • Image file is deleted.

❖**Information**
• To delete several files, on the album screen, tap 🔲 and [Select items], then select image files to delete, tap 🗑 and tap [Delete]. When a file contains pictures continuously taken, tap [Delete cover]/[Delete burst]▶[Delete].

Using optional menu

View slideshow, edit image, set image to phonebook entry or as wallpaper, check shooting date and time, etc.

1 On the picture viewing screen/ video playing screen, tap the screen and tap 🔳.

2 From the displayed menu, select item you want to use.
   • After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

- Different options may be shown or some items cannot be operated in some image files.
- In Step 2, tap "Throw" to display the connection device selection screen (if no devices are found, tap [Add new device] to make the setting). Select a device on the connection device selection screen to share files between a DLNA device, Bluetooth device, or screen mirroring device and the terminal.

YouTube

YouTube is a free online video streaming service. You can play, search for and upload videos.
- A packet communication charge is applied when downloading or uploading video content using mobile networks.

Playing YouTube video

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [YouTube].
- If you do not set Google account, the Google account setting screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- When a message appears, follow the onscreen instructions.
- A list of videos appears. You can select from categories.

2 Tap a video to play it.
- Tap the screen to display play/pause icon or progress bar. Drag the marker left or right on the progress to change playing point.
- Turn the terminal sideways to switch to the landscape view.
- Tap ⬠ to stop playing and return to the video list screen.
- To quit YouTube, tap ⌂.

❖**Information**
- For movies with caption function which can display subtitles, "CC" appears by tapping the screen while playing in the landscape screen. Tap [CC] to set the caption function.
- When "HD" or "HQ" appears by tapping the screen while playing in the landscape screen mode, tap [HD]/[HQ] to play in high quality. A video plays in high quality when Wi-Fi is connected. To always play video in high quality even when mobile network is connected, tap ⋮, then tap [Settings]▶[General] then mark "High quality on mobile" checkbox.
- Tap 🔍 to search videos. To delete search history, tap ⋮ and [Settings]▶[Search]▶[Clear search history]▶[OK].

Media Player

Play back music and videos stored on the internal storage or a microSD card using Media Player.

- For information on how to copy music and video data from a PC, see "Connecting to a PC with microUSB cable" (P.242).
- For information on file formats of playable data, see "Playing multimedia content" (P.173).

Activating Media Player

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Media Player].
- Media Player screen appears.

■ Media Player screen
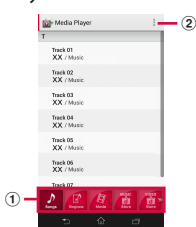
ⓐ Tab
- Change displayed information.
- Flick left or right.
ⓑ View optional menu

❖**Information**
- To change the order of tab icons, tap ⋮ and tap [Settings]▶[Arrange icons], drag ⬌ up and down on the item to change then tap [Apply].

Playing music/video

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Media Player].
- Tap [Movie] tab at the bottom of the screen to display video list.

2 Tap a song/video.
- Song/video is played.

■ Music playback screen
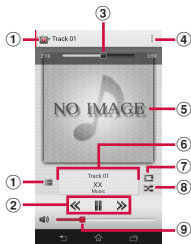
ⓐ Back to song list
ⓑ Go back to the beginning of the track or to the previous track/Play or pause/Skip to the next track
ⓒ Playback point
ⓓ View optional menu
ⓔ Album art
ⓕ Song information
ⓖ Repeat OFF/Repeat ON/1 track repeat

h Shuffle OFF/Shuffle ON
i Volume control
  • Alternatively, press ◁▷ during playback to adjust volume.

❖**Information**

• You can return to the Home screen to perform another operation while listening to music in the background. To return to the music playback screen, from the Home screen, tap ⋮⋮ then tap [Media Player], or drag the status bar downward to tap the name of song that is being played.

■ Video playback screen
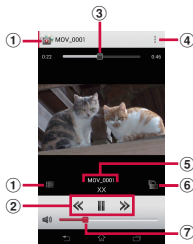
a Back to video list
b Go back to the beginning of the video or to the previous video/Play or pause/Skip to the next video
c Playback point
d View optional menu
e Video information
f Auto-rotate screen ON/OFF
  • Tap 🔄 to turn red and disable Auto-rotate screen.

g Volume control
  • Alternatively, press ◁▷ during playback to adjust volume.

❖**Information**

• While in landscape view, tap the screen to display option menu icons etc.

Playlist

You can play back songs in the order you decided using playlist.

Creating a playlist

1 From the Home screen, tap ⋮⋮, then tap [Media Player].

2 Flick left and right on tabs at the bottom of the screen and tap [Play list].
  • Play list screen appears.

3 Tap [Create new] and enter the access point name and tap [OK].

4 Tap [Add songs to playlist] and select songs you want to add.
  • You can also select songs from "Artists" and "Albums".
  • ⊕ on the selected song turns red and the song is added to Play list by each tap.

5 Tap [Apply]▶[Save]▶[OK].

Editing songs in playlist

1 On the play list screen, select a playlist to edit and tap [Edit].

■ Changing order of the songs
Drag up and down ≑ in song to change order and tap [Save]▶[OK].

■ Deleting songs from playlist
Select a song to delete and tap [Save]▶[OK].
· Tapping [Delete all songs] toggles select all/deselect all.

Deleting playlist

1 On the play list screen, tap [Edit].

2 Select a playlist you want to delete.

3 Tap [Save]▶[OK].
· Tapping [Delete all playlists] toggles select all/deselect all.

❖**Information**
· "Recently added songs", "Recently played songs", and "Most played songs" playlists cannot be deleted.

Socialife

Socialife is an application with which you can view or manage SNS such as Facebook, Twitter, etc. or news websites etc. collectively.
· To use Socialife, an account for Facebook or Sony Entertainment Network is needed.

Activating Socialife

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Socialife].
· After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

Menu

Various operations can be done from the following menu.

My Stream	Display timelines of registered network services and news sites as one. Also, displaying them by category such as Facebook, Twitter, news, etc. is available.
Favorites	Display SNS messages, news articles, etc. registered to Favorites in My stream.
Discovery	Display popular news sites among Socialife users, recommended news sites, etc.
Settings	Register news site, manage sign-in IDs, or display help or information, etc.

Location services

Your current location can be positioned using GPS, Wi-Fi, or mobile network. If you use GPS technology it may take a little longer, but it will find your position with high precision. If you use Wi-Fi or mobile network, your position is found shortly but accuracy may decrease. Use GPS, Wi-Fi, and mobile network in combination to quickly find your position with high precision.

GPS function

The terminal has a GPS receiver that uses satellite signals to calculate your location. Some GPS features use the Internet. Data rates and charges may apply.
When you use GPS function to find your location, make sure you have a clear view of the sky. If GPS does not find your location after several minutes, move to another location. To help the search, stand still and do not cover the GPS antenna section (P.29). The first time you use the GPS, it may take about 10 minutes to find your location.

- Use the GPS system with great care. DOCOMO is not liable for any damage caused by abnormality of the system.

- Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities for any purely economic loss including those due to missing a chance to check the measurement (communication) results because of external factors (including the running out of the battery), such as a failure, malfunction, or any other problems of the terminal or the power failure.

- You cannot use the terminal as a navigation device for an aircraft, vehicle, and person. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss while performing a navigation using the location information.

- You cannot use the terminal as a high-accuracy measurement GPS. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss due to a deviation of the location information.

- The GPS signals cannot be easily received near a vehicle's sun visor with metal parts.

- GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. The department controls the accuracy of the system, and manages the system. Therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (degradation of accuracy, suspension of radio wave transmission, etc.) at the discretion of the U.S. Department of Defense.

- Some wireless communications products (mobile phone, data detectors and some others) block satellite signals and also causes instability of signal reception.
- Some map displays based on location information (latitude/longitude information) may be not accurate due to some countries' or regions' regulations.

■ Where radio waves are difficult to receive

Note that radio waves may not be received or it may be difficult to receive radio waves in the following conditions, since GPS uses radio waves from a satellite.
- Inside or immediately under a building
- Inside a bag or box
- Inside or under a thick covering of trees
- In a car, inside a train compartment
- When there are obstructions (people or objects) near the terminal
- Inside a basement or tunnel, and below the ground or water
- In buildings-clustered or residential area
- Near a high-voltage cable
- Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow

❖**Note**
- If some of the GPS functions are not available, or if none of them are, check that your contract includes the use of the Internet, and see "Wireless & networks" (P.194).
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for navigation services or for the accuracy of location services.

Activating GPS/Location services

You can position current location using GPS, Wi-Fi or information sent from base stations of mobile network.

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔡, then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [Location services].

3 Tap or drag right ⬤ for Access to my location.

4 Read note on GPS location services and tap [Agree], then read Location consent and tap [Agree].
- "GPS satellites" and "Google's location service" are marked.

❖**Information**
- The note for location information may appear in Step 4.
- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap [GPS] to turn on/off GPS. To activate, read the note on GPS location services and tap [Agree].

- Your location information is sent to Google without specifying who you are. Your location information may be sent even when the application is not running.
- "GPS satellites" and "Google's location service" can be set individually.

■ Using My location info in Google application

To identify your location with a Google application such as Google Maps, you need to allow the Google application to access location information.

When you set a Google account, set the location information settings from Privacy in the account. For details on Google account, see "Setting Google account" (P.223).

- Turn on the location information service setting beforehand (P.182).

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [Google]▶[Location settings].

3 Tap or drag right of Access to my location.

Using Google Maps

The Google Maps application allows you to view your current location, find other locations and search routes.

❖**Information**
- To use Google Maps, enable data traffic (LTE/3G/GPRS) or connect to Wi-Fi.
- Google Maps does not cover the whole world.
- Only using LTE/3G/Wi-Fi connection may not detect some locations.
- Google may provide updated service or function.

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Maps].
- When a message appears, follow the onscreen instructions.
- A map screen appears.

Finding the current location on the map

You can detect your current location using location information service.

❖**Information**
- To detect current location, enable the location information service (P.182) beforehand, then allow Google application to access the location information (P.183). If you do not set a Google account, on the map screen, tap and [Settings]▶[Location settings].

1 On the map screen, tap 🔘.
- The blinking blue mark shows the current location.
- If you tap 🔘, the terminal's geomagnetic compass links the direction displayed on the map.

Zooming in/out on a map

1 Pinch-in/-out on the Maps screen.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, double-tap the screen to zoom in.
- Tapping the screen with 2 fingers also zooms out.

Viewing Street View

Street View does not cover some areas. For uncovered area, Street View icon appears in light gray.

1 Touch and hold a spot on the map that you are going to look at in Street View.

2 Tap the displayed call-out.

3 Tap [Street view]▶[OK].
- On the Street View display, tap 🔳 and tap [Compass mode]. The compass in Street View shows the same direction as the terminal's geomagnetic compass.

Searching for a location you want to look at

1 On the map screen, tap 🔍.

2 Fill out the search bar.
- You can enter addresses, city names, business types and institution names (for example, London and art museum).
- When a list of places matched to the entered letters appears on the screen, tap a place in the list to check the location on the map.

3 Tap 🔎 on the software keyboard.
- Search result appears on the map.
- When "Did you mean:" appears at the top of the map or "RESULT LIST" appears at the bottom of the map, tap to select the place to view.

4 Tap a destination.
- A detailed information screen appears.

❖**Information**
- On the detailed information screen, you can check the route or phone number for the searched location. The items displayed vary depending on the location.
- On the map screen, tap 🔍 to select a category such as "Restaurants", "Cafes" and show it on the map.

Changing the layers

You can select information to overlay on the map.

1 On the map screen, tap ⬙.

2 Tap information to display.
  • Traffic information and routes are not available in all locations.

Traffic	Show traffic condition.
Satellite	Display satellite photo.
Terrain	Display geological formation.
Transit Lines	Show route information.
Latitude	Join Latitude.
My Maps	View My Maps that you create on a PC. Only viewing : You cannot create My Maps on the terminal.
Wikipedia	Display Ⓦ. Tap Ⓦ to display a Wikipedia article related to the location.

Getting direction

You can receive detailed guides for your destination.

1 On the map screen, tap ◈.

2 Enter a start point in the upper entry field, and an end point in the lower entry field.

  • Alternatively, tap ◢ at the right of the input field to select a Start point and End point from "My current location"/ "Contacts"/"Point on map"/"My Places".

3 Select a transportation from 🚗 (Driving)/ 🚌 (Transit)/ 🚶 (Walking).

  • When you select transit, you can select preferred transit or conditions.

4 Tap [GET DIRECTIONS].

  ■ Going by car/on foot
  Direction is shown on a map.

  ■ Going by public transport
  Trip list appears. Select a route to check details.

❖**Information**
• After Step 4, tap ◢ to use easy route search with My Location as Start point.

Clearing the Maps

Clear displayed layers, route search results and some others.

1 On the map screen, tap ⚏ and tap [Clear Map].

Checking where a friend is by Google Latitude

Google Latitude enables you to share location information with your friends on the map.

You need to set up a Google account (P.223) and join Latitude and invite a friend who gives his or her location information, or to receive an invitation from him or her.

Joining Latitude

You need to turn on the location information service setting beforehand. For details, see "Activating GPS/Location services" (P.182).

1 On the map screen, tap [Maps] ▶[Latitude].
  - If you do not set Google account, tap [Join Latitude] to display the Google account setting screen. Follow the onscreen instructions.

2 Tap [MAP VIEW].

❖**Information**
- To set Latitude, cancel sharing location data, etc., tap on the map screen, then tap [Settings]▶[Location settings] to display a screen for the operation.
- For details of Latitude, tap on the map screen, then tap [Help]▶[How to]▶[Additional Maps features]▶[Latitude] to view the help.

Calendar

The terminal has a built-in calendar for the schedule. If you have a Google account etc., you can synchronize the terminal's calendar and web calendar. For details, see "Setting an account" (P.223).

- When a Google account is set, tap [Sync Calendar] in the Sync items of Google account (P.224).

Displaying calendar

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Calendar].
  - A calendar screen appears.

2 Tap any of [Month]/[Week]/[Day].
  - Tap ▧ to move the cursor to date and time set on the terminal. Number displayed on the icon shows the current date.
  - Flick the calendar left or right to display the next or previous month/week/day according to the view mode.
  - Pinch out/in on the weekly or daily schedule screen to zoom in/out calendar.

Creating a schedule in Calendar

1 Tap ➕ on the calendar screen.

2 Enter a name, date and time, location, and description for event.

3 Tap [Done].

❖**Information**
- When you set a Google account, you can select an account to create schedule to in Step 2.
- Tap ➕ beside "Add reminder" to add a new notification.
- Tap ﹀ in "More" and flick up the screen to set "Repetition", "Attendees", "Time zone", "Show me as:", and "Privacy".

Displaying events in Calendar

1 On the calendar screen, display date or time when event is scheduled.
- On the month display screen, tap a date in which event is scheduled.
- On the calendar screen, tap ⋮ and [Agenda] to display a list of events.

2 Tap an event to view description.

❖**Information**
- On the calendar screen, tap ⋮ and [My calendars] to synchronize with the docomo account. You can view the events created in "Schedule" app in the Calendar.

- If you log in to Facebook, tap [Sync Calendar] in "Xperia™ with Facebook" (P.225) to display events in Facebook in the Calendar.

Searching events in Calendar

1 On the calendar screen, tap ⋮, then tap [Search].

2 Enter a keyword and tap 🔍 on the software keyboard.
- Search results appear. Tap an event to view details.

Deleting events from Calendar

1 On the calendar screen, display date or time when event is scheduled.
- On the month display screen, tap a date in which event is scheduled.
- On the calendar screen, tap ⋮ and [Agenda] to display a list of events.

2 Touch and hold an event you want to delete.

3 Tap [Delete event]▶[Delete].

❖**Information**
- To delete all events, tap ⋮ on the Calendar screen, then tap [Settings]▶[Delete all events]▶[Delete].

Canceling reminder or setting snooze

When scheduled time arrives, 🔲 appears on the status bar.

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap [Snooze]/[Dismiss].
   • Tap [Snooze] to show pop-up menu and select snooze interval. After set time elapses, notification appears again.

❖**Information**
• Snooze means a function with which reminder once dismissed reactivates after a while.
• For an event set attendee by selecting Google account, tap [Respond] displayed on the Notification panel to create and send a mail to the participant.

Changing calendar settings

Set Calendar view, way to notify, Default reminder time, phrases for quick responses, etc.

1 On the calendar screen, tap 📱 , then tap [Settings].

2 Select an item to change.

Alarm & clock

With "Alarm & clock" app, you can set an alarm and use world clock, stopwatch and timer.

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔳 , then [Alarm & clock].
   • Alarm screen appears.

■ Alarm screen
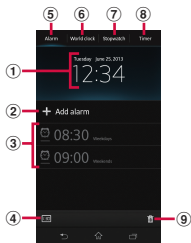
ⓐ Clock display
   • Tap to view date and time (P.226) setting screen.
ⓑ Add alarm (P.189)
ⓒ Alarm list
ⓓ Display clock in full screen
ⓔ View alarm screen
ⓕ View world clock (P.190)
ⓖ View stop watch (P.190)
ⓗ View timer (P.191)
ⓘ Deleting alarms (P.189)

Setting alarm

1 On the alarm screen, tap [Add alarm].

2 Set time etc. and tap [Done].
   - Tap [Advanced alarm settings] to view all setting items.

Time	Flick up and down on numbers to set time.
Repeat	Set a day of the week for the alarm.
Alarm sound*	Set alarm sound.
Snooze duration	Set time interval to sound the ringtone again after stopping the ringtone.
Alarm text	Enter texts that appear while alarm is sounding.
Style settings	Mark the checkbox and tap to set displayed image and sounded alarm while sounding alarm.
Vibrate	Set whether to vibrate at the alarm time.
Alarm volume	Drag the slider left or right to adjust the volume level.
Alarm in silent mode	Set whether to sound alarm even in silent mode.
Side keys behavior	Set behavior when pressing ⬛⬛ / ◻ while alarm is sounding.
Auto silent time	Set time interval until alarm automatically stops.

* If "Style settings" is marked, this setting is disabled. To set "Alarm sound", unmark "Style settings".

❖**Information**
- To switch on/off alarm, on the alarm screen, tap 🕐 or touch and hold an alarm►Tap [Turn alarm on]/[Turn alarm off].
- When an alarm is turned on, the line under 🕐 lights blue.

Deleting the alarm

1 On the alarm screen, tap 🗑 and mark alarm to delete.

2 Tap [Delete]►[Yes].
   - The number of marked alarms appears on the right of "Delete".

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, on the alarm screen, touch and hold an alarm you want to delete, then tap [Delete alarm]►[Yes] to delete the alarm.

Stopping an alarm while the alarm is sounding

1 While alarm is sounding, drag 🔘 to the right.

❖**Information**
- If you tap [Snooze], the alarm sounds again when the time set in "Snooze duration" (P.189) has passed.

Apps 189

Using World clock

Display the date and time in cities around the world.

1 **On the alarm screen, tap "World clock" tab.**
- World clock screen appears.

2 **Tap [Add city].**

3 **Select a city.**

❖**Information**
- Tap 🌐, then flick the city list left or right to check date and time corresponding to the cities.
- Time display in cities during day-light saving time may differ from time difference to standard time (GMT) displayed on the screen when adding a city in Step 2.

Changing World clock

You can switch, sort or delete Celsius/ Fahrenheit displayed on World clock.

1 **On the world clock screen, tap** 🔳 **.**

■ Setting home city
Tap [Set home city] and select a city.
- 🏠 is displayed on the city set to home city.

■ Switching Celsius/Fahrenheit
Tap [Celsius]/[Fahrenheit].

■ Sorting
Tap [Rearrange] and drag 🔳 up and down beside added cities, then tap [Done].

■ Deleting
Tap [Delete] and mark cities you want to delete, then tap [Delete]▶[Yes].
- The number of the marked cities appears on the right of "Delete".
- Alternatively, on the world clock screen, touch and hold a city you want to delete, then tap [Delete city]▶[Yes] to delete.

Using Stopwatch

1 **On the alarm screen, tap "Stopwatch" tab.**

2 **Tap [Start].**
- Timer starts, and ⏱ appears in the status bar.
- Tap [Lap] to measure elapsed time.

3 **Tap [Stop].**
- Tap [Start] to resume measuring.
- Tap [Reset] to delete measured time and lap time.

Using Timer

1 **On the alarm screen, tap "Timer" tab.**

2 **Tap [Set time].**

3 **Flick up and down on numbers to adjust the time and then tap [Done].**

4 **Tap [Start].**
   - Timer starts, and 🔘 appears in the status bar.

5 **Tap [Stop].**
   - Stop sounding alarm after a set time has elapsed.
   - Tap [Stop] within a set time duration to pause timer. Tap [Start] to resume timer.

❖**Information**
- Tap 🔘 to set time from Timer history.
- Tap 🔳 and select an alarm sound, then tap [Done] to change the alarm sound.
- While using a desired application, tap 🔲 and 🔘 to use the timer of "Small apps" (P.57).

ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)

Move or back up data such as phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, bookmarks, etc. using external memory such as microSD card.
- Do not remove the battery or microSD card during backup or restoring. Doing so may damage the terminal data.
- If the battery is low, backup or restore may not be done. In that case, charge the terminal and retry to back up or restore.
- docomo apps password is required to back up or restore. For details on docomo apps password, see "docomo apps password" (P.215).

❖**Information**
- For details on docomo backup, tap 🔳, then tap [Help] to view the help.

Backing up

If microSD card is not installed, data such as images and movies are saved to the internal storage. You can back up only data such as images and movies stored in the internal storage. Data stored in microSD card cannot be backed up.

1 **From the Home screen, tap [image], then tap [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)].**

2 **Tap [microSDカードへ保存 (save to microSD card)].**
   • When you use for the first time, agree to "License agreement".

3 **Tap [Backup].**

4 **Mark the data to back up.**
   • Tap [Select all] to mark all data. Tap [Deselect] to unmark all marked data.

5 **Tap [Start backup]▶[OK].**

6 **Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].**
   • Data is backed up in a microSD card.

Restoring

1 **From the Home screen, tap [image], then tap [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)].**

2 **Tap [microSDカードへ保存 (save to microSD card)].**
   • When you use for the first time, agree to "License agreement".

3 **Tap [Restore].**

4 **Tap [Select] on data type to restore and mark data to restore, and tap [Select].**
   • Tap [Select latest data] to select the latest data for each data type.

5 **Tap [Add]/[Overwrite] to select restore method and tap [Start restore]▶[OK].**

6 **Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].**
   • Backed up data is restored.

Copying phonebook entries registered in Google account to docomo account

You can copy contacts data registered in Google account and in the terminal to docomo account.

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)].**

2 **Tap [microSDカードへ保存 (save to microSD card)].**
- When you use for the first time, agree to "License agreement".

3 **Tap [Phonebook account copy], tap [Select] on Google account contacts you want to copy.**

4 **Tap [Overwrite]/[Add].**
- Phonebook data is copied to docomo account.

❖**Information**
- If phonebook item names (e.g. Phone number, etc.) of the other terminal are different from ones of your terminal, the item names may be changed or deleted. Also, some text may be deleted in copied destination, because savable characters in a phonebook entry vary by terminal.
- When backing up phonebook entries to microSD card, data without Name cannot be copied.

- If microSD card is low on memory, backup may not be done. In that case, delete unnecessary files to make available space.

OfficeSuite

With OfficeSuite, you can view files of Word, Excel, etc. from the terminal or a microSD card.

❖**Information**
- Some files may not be viewed properly due to corrupted layouts.

Starting OfficeSuite

1 **From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [OfficeSuite].**
- When a registration screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.
- OfficeSuite starts.

Viewing the setting menu

1 From the Home screen, tap [::::] , then tap [Settings].

■ Setting menu

WIRELESS & NETWORKS	P.194
DEVICE	P.206
PERSONAL	P.215
ACCOUNTS	P.223
SYSTEM	P.226

❖**Information**

- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap [::::] and [⋮] then tap [Settings], or drag the status bar downwards and tap [Settings] to display the Settings screen.

Wireless & networks

You can make settings related to networks such as Wi-Fi, Bluetooth function.

Wi-Fi		P.194
Bluetooth		P.199, P.236
Data usage		P.199
More...	Airplane mode	P.200
	VPN	P.201
	Tethering & portable hotspot	P.202
	Media server settings	P.246
	Mobile networks	P.204, P.252
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings	P.134

Wi-Fi

Using the Wi-Fi function, you can connect to an access point for your home, company network or public wireless LAN services to use mail and Internet.

- Even when Wi-Fi is on, packet communication is available. However, while you connect Wi-Fi network, Wi-Fi comes first.
- When a Wi-Fi network is disconnected, connection is automatically switched to a LTE/WCDMA/GSM network mode. Note that packet communication charge may be applied if network connection stays switched.

- Turn the Wi-Fi function to off when you do not use Wi-Fi to cut battery power consumption.
- If you start Wi-Fi connection while using Wi-Fi Direct function (P.198) or during Screen mirroring (P.214), Wi-Fi Direct function/Screen mirroring is terminated.

Before using Wi-Fi

To use Wi-Fi function, turn on Wi-Fi and search available Wi-Fi network, then connect it.
- To access the Internet using Wi-Fi function, connect to Wi-Fi network in advance.

❖**Information**
- Make sure to receive signal strong enough for using Wi-Fi function. The signal strength of the Wi-Fi network varies by the location of the terminal. Moving closer to the Wi-Fi router might improve the signal reception.

■ Reception interference caused by Bluetooth devices
Bluetooth devices and wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g/n) devices use the same frequency band (2.4GHz). If you use Bluetooth devices near a wireless LAN device, reception interference may occur or the communications speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem. Communication may be interrupted or sound may be lost while

streaming data, etc. In these cases, do the following:
- Keep the terminal and Bluetooth device to be connected wirelessly 10 or more meters away from a wireless LAN device.
- Within 10 meters, turn off the Bluetooth device to be connected.

Turning on Wi-Fi

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap ⬜ of Wi-Fi or drag it to the right.

❖**Information**
- It may take a few seconds before the Wi-Fi connection is on.
- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Wi-Fi] to turn on/off Wi-Fi function.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi network

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].
- Available Wi-Fi networks or secured Wi-Fi networks are displayed.

2 Select a Wi-Fi network to connect.
- To connect to a protected Wi-Fi network, enter the password and tap [Connect].

- To connect Wi-Fi network with WPS compatible device, tap 📶, or tap ⋮, then tap [WPS Pin Entry]. Follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
- The next time you connect to a Wi-Fi network, the password is saved in the terminal.
- If you enter a wrong password (security key) when selecting an access point to connect, any of the following appears.
  - Saved, Secured with WEP
  - Saved, Secured with WPA/WPA2
  - Saved, Secured with 802.1x
  - Avoided poor Internet connection[*]
  - Authentication problem
  - Limited connectivity
  [*] It may take 5 minutes or more to display the message after [Connect] is tapped.
  Check a password (security key).
  When any of above messages appears even if you enter a correct password (security key), the correct IP address may not have been acquired. Check the signal status and reconnect.
- To use docomo service via Wi-Fi, setting "Wi-Fi option password" is required. To set, from the Settings screen (P.194), tap [docomo service]▶[Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps]▶[Wi-Fi option password].

■ Wi-Fi network status icons on status bar
The following icons appear according to the Wi-Fi network connection status.

📶	Appears when connected to Wi-Fi network.
📶	Appears when communicating via Wi-Fi network.
📶	Appears when connected to Wi-Fi network using Auto IP function.
📶	Appears when any open network within the service area is detected.[*]

[*] Without connected to Wi-Fi network, you need to set Wi-Fi Network notification to on beforehand (P.197).

Disconnecting a Wi-Fi network

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].**

2 **Tap the Wi-Fi network that is currently connected.**

3 **Tap [Forget].**

Wi-Fi network status

When you are connected to a Wi-Fi network or when there are Wi-Fi networks available in your vicinity, you can see the status of these Wi-Fi networks. You can also set the terminal to notify you when an unsecured Wi-Fi network is detected.

Setting the Wi-Fi open network notification to ON

- You need to turn on the Wi-Fi setting beforehand (P.195).

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].**

2 **Tap and [Advanced].**

3 **Mark "Network notification".**

Scanning for Wi-Fi networks manually

- You need to turn on the Wi-Fi setting beforehand (P.195).

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].**

2 **Tap and [Scan].**
- Scanning Wi-Fi networks starts.

3 **Tap a Wi-Fi network in the list to connect.**

Adding a Wi-Fi network manually

- You need to turn on the Wi-Fi setting beforehand (P.195).

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].**

2 **Tap and enter a network SSID of the Wi-Fi network you want to add.**

3 **Tap "Security" setting item and tap a security type of the Wi-Fi network you want to add.**
- 4 options, "None", "WEP", "WPA/WPA2 PSK", or "802.1x EAP", appear.

4 **If required, enter security information for the Wi-Fi network you want to add.**

5 **Tap [Save].**

Viewing detailed information on a connected Wi-Fi network

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].**

2 **Tap the Wi-Fi network that is currently connected.**
- The detailed network information is displayed.

- In Step 1, tap ▮, then tap [Advanced] to enable/disable Auto IP support or check "MAC address" and "IP address".
  Mark "Avoid poor connections" to use LTE/WCDMA/GSM network mode when Wi-Fi radio waves are weak.

Changing Wi-Fi sleep policy

You can choose to disable the Wi-Fi function in the terminal when the screen backlight turns off. You can also set the terminal to always turn on the Wi-Fi function or to always turn it on when the terminal is charged.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap ▮ and [Advanced].

3 Tap [Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep].

4 Tap any of [Always]/[Only when plugged in]/[Never (increases data usage)].

❖**Information**
- When a Wi-Fi network is disconnected, connection is automatically switched to a LTE/WCDMA/GSM network mode.

Using Wi-Fi Direct compatible device

You can connect among the devices compatible with Wi-Fi Direct via Wi-Fi even without configuring access point.
- You need to turn on the Wi-Fi setting beforehand (P.195).

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap ▮ and [Wi-Fi Direct].
- A list of detected Wi-Fi Direct devices appears.

3 Select a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device name to connect.
- If a note appears, tap [OK].
- Tap [Search for devices] to refresh the detection list.
- To change the terminal name displayed on the detected Wi-Fi Direct compatible device, tap [Rename device].

❖**Information**
- To use the Wi-Fi Direct function, you need an application compatible with Wi-Fi Direct function. The function becomes available when you install a compatible application.
- If you start Wi-Fi Direct connection during Wi-Fi connection, Wi-Fi connection is disconnected and switched to packet communication (LTE/WCDMA/GSM).

Bluetooth

Connect Bluetooth device wirelessly using Bluetooth function. For details on Bluetooth communication, see "Using Bluetooth function" (P.236).

Data usage

Enable/Disable mobile data communication or set data usage limit.

❖**Information**
· You can check communication volume for each application. For some applications, the settings can be displayed.

Enabling mobile data communication

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⊙ of Mobile data communication or drag it to the right.

3 Read the note and tap [Yes].

❖**Information**
· Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Mobile data] to turn on/off mobile data communication.

Setting data usage limit

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap [Set mobile data limit] and read the notes, and then tap [OK].
· "Set mobile data limit" is marked.

❖**Information**
· Note that mobile data communication will be disabled when data usage volume reaches to the limit.
· Change the setting value for data usage limit and the value for alert by dragging the right end of each bar in the graph. Alternatively, tap each bar, drag value and tap [Set] to change it.

Setting Data usage cycle

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap "Data usage cycle" setting item and tap the set period/ [Change cycle...].
· When you tap [Change cycle...], select reset date and tap [Set].

Permitting data roaming

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Data roaming], then read the notes and then tap [OK].
   • "Data roaming" is marked.

Restricting background data

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Restrict background data], then read the notes and then tap [OK].
   • "Restrict background data" is marked.

❖**Information**
• To restrict use of specified Wi-Fi network, in Step 2, tap ⋮ and tap [Mobile hotspots], then mark a Wi-Fi network you want to restrict.

Displaying Wi-Fi usage status

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⋮ and mark "Show Wi-Fi usage".
   • "Wi-Fi" tab is displayed and tap it to check Wi-Fi usage condition.

Airplane mode

In this mode, the functions of using radio wave transmissions such as calling, accessing to the Internet (including sending/receiving mails), etc. are disabled. It is useful when you want to operate the terminal with no interruption of incoming calls or mails.

Turning on Airplane mode

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...].

2 Mark [Airplane mode].
   • When Airplane mode is set, ✈ appears on the status bar.
   • When you unmark "Airplane mode", the Airplane mode turns off.

❖**Information**
• Alternatively, press and hold ◉ for over a second and then tap [Airplane mode] in the pop-up screen, or drag the status bar downward and tap [Airplane] to set Airplane mode to on/off.
• Even if Airplane mode is on, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth function and NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function can be turned on. Be careful not to use Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, NFC Reader/Writer, P2P functions in a place where the use is prohibited such as in a airplane or hospital.

Connecting to a VPN (Virtual Private Network)

Virtual Private Network (VPN) is a technology to connect to the information in a protected local network from another network.
Generally, VPNs are provided to companies, schools and other facilities. A user can access to the information in the local network from outside of the premises.
To set up a VPN access from the terminal, you need to retrieve the information related to security from your network administrator. For details, see the following website.
http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/support/ (In Japanese only)

❖**Information**
• If you set sp-mode as an ISP, you cannot use PPTP.

Adding a VPN

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[VPN].
   • When the note appears, follow the onscreen instructions to set unlocking method of screen lock. For details, see "Setting screen unlock method" (P.219).

2 Tap [Add VPN profile].

3 When an editing screen is displayed, follow the instruction of the network administrator to enter/set required items of VPN settings.

4 Tap [Save].

❖**Information**
• Added VPNs can be edited/deleted.
   To edit VPNs, touch and hold a VPN you want to change, then tap [Edit profile]. Change the VPN settings as required and tap [Save]. To delete, touch and hold a VPN you want to delete, then tap [Delete profile].

Connecting to a VPN

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[VPN].

2 Tap a VPN to connect to.

3 Enter required authentication information and tap [Connect].
   • When you are connected to a VPN, 🔑 appears in the status bar.

Disconnecting a VPN

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap a notification that indicates VPN connected.

3 Tap [Disconnect].

- Alternatively, from the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[VPN], tap a indication of a connected VPN▶[Disconnect] to disconnect VPN.

Using tethering function

Tethering stands for using mobile devices such as smartphone as modem to allow USB compatible devices or wireless LAN devices to access the Internet.

❖**Information**
- Packet communication charge when using tethering varies depending on the charging plan you use. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- For details on usage charge, see the following website.
  http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/
- When the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, mobile data communication is disabled, or out of service area, USB tethering or Wi-Fi tethering is not available.

Setting USB tethering

Connecting the terminal to a USB compatible PC with Micro USB Cable 01 (optional), and using the terminal as a modem, you can connect the PC to the Internet.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot].**

2 **Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable (P.36).**
   - When you connect microUSB cable for the first time, the driver software for the terminal is installed to a PC. Wait for a while until installation is completed.
   - When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Skip].

3 **Tap [USB tethering].**

4 **Confirm "Details", then tap [OK].**
   - "USB tethering" is marked.

❖**Information**
- System requirements (OS) for USB tethering are as follows.
  - Microsoft Windows 8
  - Microsoft Windows 7
  - Microsoft Windows Vista
  - Microsoft Windows XP*
  - Linux
  * For Microsoft Windows XP, installation of PC Companion is required.
- During USB tethering, the terminal storage cannot be mounted with a PC.
- For details such as method of USB tethering for other OS, see the following website.
  http://www.android.com/tether#usb (In Japanese only)

Setting Wi-Fi tethering

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot].**

2 **Tap [Portable Wi-Fi hotspot].**

3 **Confirm "Details", then tap [OK].**
   • "Portable Wi-Fi hotspot" is marked.

❖**Information**
• If Wi-Fi tethering starts while connecting to Wi-Fi network, Wi-Fi network is disconnected and automatically connected when Wi-Fi tethering ends. Alternatively, when the terminal and DLNA device are connected via Wi-Fi network, starting/ending Wi-Fi tethering affects Wi-Fi connection.
• USB tethering and Wi-Fi tethering can be used at the same time.
• Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards to open the Notification panel and tap [Hotspot] to set Wi-Fi tethering function to on/off. When Wi-Fi tethering is ended on the Notification panel, Wi-Fi connection is not automatically connected.
• For details on Wi-Fi tethering, see the following website.
   http://www.android.com/tether#wifi

Setting up a portable Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use the terminal as a Wi-Fi access point to connect up to 10 wireless LAN devices to the Internet simultaneously.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot].**

2 **Tap [Portable Wi-Fi hotspot settings]▶[Configure Wi-Fi hotspot].**

3 **Enter a network SSID of the Wi-Fi access point to set.**
   • "Xperia A_XXXX" is set by default.

4 **Tap "Security" setting item and tap a security type of the Wi-Fi network to set.**
   • "None" and "WPA2 PSK" appear.

5 **Enter security information of the Wi-Fi access point to set as required.**

6 **Tap [Save].**

❖**Information**
• By default, the password is set at random. You can change the password as desired.

Setting an access point

An access point for connecting to the Internet (sp-mode, mopera U) is already registered. You can add or change it if necessary.
By default, sp-mode (P.205) is set for the usual access point.

Checking the access point in use

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].**
 - Available access points (APN) appear.
 - It is recommended that you use the displayed access point without editing.

❖**Information**
 - If you have several available connections, a marked radio button to the right indicates the active network connection.

Setting an access point additionally

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].**

2 **Tap 　 and [New APN].**

3 **Tap [Name], enter a name and tap [OK].**

4 **Tap [APN] and enter the access point name and tap [OK].**

5 **Tap and enter all other information required by your network operator.**

6 **Tap 　 and [Save].**

❖**Information**
 - Do not change the MCC/MNC. If you change MCC/MNC to other than the default value (440/10), the set new APN does not appear on the APNs screen. When the set new APN does not appear on the APNs screen, tap 　 to make APN settings with "Reset to default" or "New APN" again.
 - Note that, when using the prediction conversion by one-byte alphabet entry mode (English mode) with mark in "Auto space" (P.78) on Japanese keyboard settings screen, spaces may be entered automatically when the prediction option is confirmed. In this case, delete spaces.

Initializing an access point

By initializing an access point, the default state is restored.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].

2 Tap ▉ **and tap [Reset to default].**

sp-mode

sp-mode is ISP for NTT DOCOMO smartphone. In addition to accessing Internet, you can use the mail service using the same address as i mode mail (@docomo.ne.jp), etc. sp-mode is a service requiring subscription. For details on sp-mode, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

mopera U

mopera U is ISP of NTT DOCOMO's Internet connection. If you have subscribed to mopera U, you can use Internet after making the simple settings. mopera U is a service requiring subscription.

Setting mopera U

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].

2 Mark "mopera U" or "mopera U設定 (mopera U settings)" radio button.
  • Return to the Home screen and open the Browser. You can enjoy the nice Internet access.

❖**Information**
• "mopera U設定 (mopera U settings)" is an access point for setting mopera U. When you use the access point for setting mopera U, packet communication charges for setting do not apply. Note that you can set only the initial setting screen or the change setting screen. For details on mopera U settings, refer to mopera U website.

Device

Call settings

You can use the network services and search for available networks. For Call settings, see "Call settings" (P.102).

Sound

Set ringtones, operation sound, vibrator, etc.
- For silent mode, see "Setting silent mode" (P.42).

Clear Phase™	Set sound quality optimized for the built-in speaker.
xLOUD™	Set audio playback level enhancement technology ("xLOUD") to enjoy powerful sounds with the built-in speaker when playing WALKMAN, YouTube, Album, etc.
Volumes	P.206
Phone ringtone	P.207
Vibrate when ringing	P.207
Notification sound	P.207
Dial pad touch tones	P.207
Touch sounds	P.207
Screen lock sound	Set whether to emit sound for unlocking the screen lock.

Vibrate on touch	Set whether to vibrate the terminal for some operations such as specified software key operation.

Adjusting each sound volume

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Sound]▶[Volumes].**
- Adjust the volume of following items.
  - Music, video, games & other media
  - Ringtone & notifications
  - Alarms

2 **Drag the slider to the right or left.**
- Drag the slider to the left for volume down, or to the right for volume up.

3 **Tap [OK].**

❖**Information**
- Even if alarm volume is set in Volumes, "Alarm volume" (P.189) set in "Alarm & clock" app is given priority.

Adjusting the ringtone volume with the volume key

1 From the Home screen, press up or down of ◁▷.
 • The volume adjustment bar appears, you can adjust the volume up or down.

❖**Information**
• You can also press ◁▷ or ⊚ to mute the ringtone for an incoming call.

Setting a ringtone/notification sound

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Sound]▶[Phone ringtone]/ [Notification sound].

2 Select a ringtone or notification sound and tap [Done].

❖**Information**
• You can set voice file in ".wav"/".m4a" or in other format which is transferred from Media Go (P.244) or downloaded from the Internet as a ringtone or notification sound.
• To set a ringtone or notification sound other than the ones stored by default, tap .
• When volume of "Music, video, games & other media" is muted (Volume 0), ringtone or notification sound cannot be heard.

Setting vibration when receiving a call

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Sound] and mark "Vibrate when ringing".
 • Ringtone sounds and the terminal vibrates when there is an incoming call.

Setting touch tones to ON

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Sound].

2 Mark "Dial pad touch tones"/ "Touch sounds".
 • If you unmark them, any operation tones do not sound when you tap.

❖**Information**
• "Dial pad touch tones" is a sound for operations on the dial pad. "Touch sounds" is a sound for selecting menu.
• To set the key sound of software keyboard, set from "Setting character entry" (P.75).

Display

Set brightness, orientation of the screen, etc.

Mobile BRAVIA Engine 2	To view photos or movies colorfully and beautifully, set image quality improving procedure (Mobile BRAVIA Engine 2). It adjusts contrast, color shade, etc.*
Brightness	P.208
White balance	P.208
Wallpaper	P.90
Auto-rotate screen	P.41
Sleep	P.209
Font size	Set font size.
Themes	Set an image for the Home screen, unlock screen, etc.
Quick settings	P.209
Lock screen	P.209

* Image quality improving procedure for still pictures is effective only for viewing in the album application.

Adjusting the screen brightness

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Display]▶[Brightness].

2 Drag the slider to the right or left.
   • Drag the slider to the left for dimmer screen, or to the right for brighter screen.

3 Tap [OK].

❖**Information**
• Mark "Adapt to lighting conditions" to adjust brightness automatically according to the ambient brightness with reference to the manually set brightness.
• Drag the status bar downwards and tap [Backlight] to switch the screen brightness to the maximum/dim (approx. 30 % of the maximum brightness).

Adjusting white balance

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Display]▶[White balance].

2 Drag the slider of "Saturation" or "Hue" to the right or left.
   • Touch and hold the area displays "Press and hold here to see previous setting" to check the previous setting.

3 Tap [Done].

❖**Information**
• Tap ▮ in Step 2 and tap [Default values] to initialize setting.

Adjusting the idle time before the screen turns off

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Display]▶[Sleep].

2 Select a time option before the screen back light turns off.

❖**Information**
- To turn the screen back light off immediately, press ⓞ.

Editing quick settings on the Notification panel

You can edit number of quick settings (P.47) or sort the order.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Display]▶[Quick settings].

■ To select quick settings to be displayed

1 Mark tools you want to display.
- Up to 10 items can be displayed.

■ To change order of quick settings

1 Drag ▓ off the quick setting you want to change the order up or down.

Changing wallpaper of the unlock screen

- Only when "Set all to" or "Lock screen" in Preferred apps settings (P.215) to "Xperia™", and set the screen unlock method (P.219) to "Swipe/Touch", you can change the wallpaper.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Display]▶[Lock screen].

2 Tap [Wallpaper]▶[Album]/ [Xperia™ wallpapers].
- For details on setting procedure, see Step 2 in "Changing wallpaper" (P.90).

Storage

Check memory volume of internal storage, microSD card, and USB storage. And you can delete data in the microSD card and USB storage and format. USB storage is an external memory such as a microSD card connected to the terminal using commercially available reader/writer cable.

INTERNAL STORAGE	Total space	Check memory space for Apps, Pictures, videos, Audio (music, ringtones, etc.), Downloads, Misc. and available space in the internal storage.
SD CARD	Total space	Check available memory space etc. of microSD card.
	Unmount SD card*	Cancel connection of microSD card to remove it safely.
	Mount SD card*	Have microSD card recognized.
	Erase SD card*	P.210

EXTERNAL USB STORAGE	Total space	Check available memory space of USB storage.
	Unmount USB storage*	Cancel connection of USB storage to remove it safely.
	Mount USB storage*	Have USB storage recognized.
	Clear USB storage*	P.211
MISCELLANEOUS	Transfer data to SD card	Transfer images, videos, music data in the internal storage to the microSD card.

* Displayed items vary depending on condition of microSD card or USB storage recognition.

Formatting microSD card

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Storage].**

2 **Tap [Erase SD card]▶[Erase SD card].**
   - Enter your screen unlock method as required.

3 **Tap [Erase everything].**

❖**Information**
- Formatting microSD card deletes all the data in it.

Formatting USB storage

- Insert external memory such as a microSD card into commercially available reader/writer cable and connect the cable to the terminal in advance.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Storage].**

2 **Tap [Clear USB storage]▶[Erase].**
- Enter your screen unlock method as required.

3 **Tap [Erase everything].**

❖**Information**
- Formatting USB storage (external memory such as microSD card) deletes all the data in it.

Increasing the available memory of the terminal

If the terminal has a small memory, you can perform the following operations to increase available memory.

- In the browser, you can clear all temporary Internet files and browser history information. For details, see "Clearing history" (P.131).
- Uninstall programs that you no longer use. For details, see "Deleting installed application" (P.213).

Power management

You can check battery consumption and set Power Saver or Location-based Wi-Fi.

Power Saver	Set Power Saver to reduce battery power consumption.
Location-based Wi-Fi	P.211
Battery	Display battery consumption, remaining battery level, etc.

Using Location-based Wi-Fi

When entering to the registered Wi-Fi network area, the terminal connects the Wi-Fi network automatically to reduce the battery power consumption.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Power management].**

2 **Tap** 🔘 **of Location-based Wi-Fi or drag it to the right.**
- When Wi-Fi network is not registered, tap [Location-based Wi-Fi]▶[Set up Wi-Fi] to connect to Wi-Fi (P.195).

Apps

Manage and delete installed applications, display memory usage condition, etc. or change the settings.

Viewing permitted operation of the applications in the terminal

You can check functions which are permitted to access to each application in the progress of performing, such as network communication function or location information function of the terminal.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to view.**

3 **Flick the screen up to view permitted operations.**
   • If all permitted operations do not appear, tap [Show all].

Force-quitting an application

If a pop-up window appears to indicate the application does not reply, you can force-quit the application.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to force-quit.**

3 **Tap [Force stop].**

4 **Read the notes and then tap [OK].**

❖**Information**
• When you do not want to force-quite the application, tap [Cancel] and wait for a reply of the application.

Deleting all data of the application

• Before deleting all installed application data, back up contents related to the application that you want to save including data saved in the application.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to delete the data.**

3 **Tap [Clear data].**

4 **Read the notes and then tap [OK].**

Deleting installed application

- Before deleting installed application, back up contents related to the application that you want to save including data saved in the application.
- Some applications cannot be deleted.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to be deleted.**

3 **Tap [Uninstall].**

4 **Tap [OK].**

5 **When uninstallation is completed, tap [OK].**

❖**Information**
- Some applications pre-installed in the terminal cannot be uninstalled. For some applications which cannot be uninstalled, disabling is possible (P.213).
- Applications downloaded from Play Store are recommended to be deleted from the Google Play screen (P.134).
- Applications can be deleted from the Application screen. For details, see "Uninstalling an application" (P.92).

Disabling application

You can disable some applications which cannot be uninstalled or services. Disabled applications are not displayed on the Application screen and you cannot execute them, but they are not uninstalled.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Flick the screen to the left to display "All" tab.**

3 **Tap an application to be disabled.**

4 **Tap [Disable].**

5 **Read the notes and then tap [OK].**
- To enable again, tap [Enable].

❖**Information**
- When you disabled an application, some other applications linked to the disabled application may not be operated correctly. Enable the disabled application again to operate them correctly.

Deleting cache of the application

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to delete cache.**

3 **Tap [Clear cache].**

Deleting settings for activating the application

You can delete settings for activating the application and restore to the default.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to delete its settings.**

3 **Tap [Clear defaults].**

Resetting application

You can reset disabling applications (P.213), settings for activating application (P.214), or restricting background data.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap** ▮ **and tap [Reset app preferences].**

3 **Tap [Reset apps].**

Set preferred application in the terminal. You can also make settings for USB connection or Wi-Fi connection to a PC or other devices.

About PlayStation Certified	Check trademarks of PlayStation.
Preferred apps settings	P.215
Screen mirroring*1	Connect to a TV that supports Screen mirroring*2 to display the screen of the terminal.
Smart Connect	Set to activate applications automatically when you connect a commercially available earphone, the AC adapter for charging, etc. Also, set how applications operate when activating or deactivating.
Start MirrorLink™	Set to allow a device compatible with MirrorLink™ to operate the terminal using microUSB cable.
Throw settings	Play various contents in the terminal with other device.
USB Connectivity	P.243

*1 Data with copyright protection cannot displayed. Depending on usage environment, image or sound may be interrupted or stopped.
Covering around the Wi-Fi antenna with your hand may affect the quality of communications.
If you start Screen mirroring during Wi-Fi connection, Wi-Fi connection is disconnected and switched to packet communication (LTE/WCDMA/GSM).
*2 Connection is available only with a device that supports HDCP.

Setting preferred apps

You can set for applications (Home app, unlock screen, phonebook app, application for play back videos or music) used in the terminal all at once or individually.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Xperia™].

2 [Preferred apps settings]▶Tap any of [Set all to]/[Home screen]/[Lock screen]/[Contacts]/[Player(music and video)].

3 Tap [docomo]/[Xperia™].
   • "docomo" or "Xperia™" is set as a using application.

❖**Information**
• To set preferred apps all at once, from the Home screen, tap [Preferred apps settings]▶[OK].

PERSONAL

docomo service

You can set passwords for applications provided by docomo or to use the services supporting AUTO-GPS.

Application manager	Set to check update for applications regularly.
Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps	Set to use docomo service when connecting Wi-Fi.
docomo apps password	Set a password for applications provided by docomo. docomo apps password is set "0000" by default.
AUTO-GPS	Set to use the services supporting AUTO-GPS.
docomo location information	Set location information function for imadoco search, imadocokantan search and Keitai-Osagashi Service.
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	Set the terminal for using docomo Wi-Fi or home Wi-Fi.
データ量確認アプリ (Check data volume application)	Set totaling cycle or starting/stopping measuring for データ量確認アプリ (Check data volume application).
Open source licenses	View open source licenses.

Location services

Set whether to permit the location information service.

Access to my location	P.182
GPS satellites	Set applications to permit applications to identify your current location using GPS.
Google's location service	Set whether to permit Google to use location information using result etc. of Google search.

Security

Set options related to security.

Screen lock	P.219
Improve face matching[*1]	Improve face lock accuracy.
Liveness check[*1]	Set whether to require blinking for unlocking by Face Unlock.
Make pattern visible[*1]	Set whether to show pattern when entering pattern.
Automatically lock[*1]	Set interval time before locking automatically when turning off the screen.
Power button instantly locks[*1]	Set whether to enable screen lock by pressing ⓞ.
Vibrate on touch[*1]	Set whether to vibrate when unlocking operation.
Owner info	Set text to be displayed on the unlock screen.

Encrypt phone	Encrypt the internal storage. If you encrypt the phone, entering a security code or password is required each time you turn on the power.
Set up SIM card lock[*2]	P.218
Make passwords visible	Set whether to show the input character before " · " appears on the password entry screen.
Device administrators	Set whether to enable device administrator.
Unknown sources	P.221
Trusted credentials	Display trusted CA credentials.
Install from internal storage	Install encrypted certificates from internal storage.
Clear credentials	Clear all certificates or credential information from the credential storage[*3].

*1 Displayed items vary depending on "Screen lock" settings.
*2 Recording is not available if a docomo mini UIM card is not attached.
*3 Save certificates and credential information in the credential storage.

❖**Information**
- To decrypt the terminal, reset (P.223) to the default status.

Protecting docomo mini UIM card

Some functions provided for convenient use of the terminal require the security code to use them. Besides the security code for locking the terminal, the network security code necessary for the network services etc. are available. Make use of the terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

■ Notes on the security codes
   • Avoid using a number that is easy to guess, such as "birth date", "part of your phone number", "street address number or room number", "1111", and "1234". Make sure to make a note of the security code you set lest you should forget it.
   • Be very careful not to let others know your security code. If your security code is known by anyone else, DOCOMO shall have no liability for any loss due to any unauthorized use of it.
   • If you forget your security codes, you must bring your official identification (such as drivers license), the terminal, and docomo mini UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop. For details, contact the "General Inquiries" on the last page.

   • The PUK code is written on the subscription form (copy for customer) handed at the subscription in the docomo Shop. If you subscribed other than docomo Shop, you must bring your official identification (such as drivers license), the docomo mini UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop or contact the "General Inquiries" on the last page.

Network security code

The network security code is a 4-digit number necessary for identification or using the docomo Network Services at reception of your request in docomo Shop or at docomo Information Center. It can be set any number at the subscription and also changed later by yourself.
You can change your network security code to new one using a PC if you have "docomo ID"/"Password" for "My docomo", the General support site for PC.
Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap [dmenu] and [お客様サポート (Customer support)]▶[各種お申込・お手続き (Various applications/procedures)] to change the security code yourself.

* For information on "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (Customer support)", see the previous page of the last page.

PIN code

You can set security code which named PIN code to docomo mini UIM card. It is set "0000" at the subscription. They can be changed by yourself.

PIN code is a 4- to 8-digit security number (code) that must be entered for user confirmation to prevent unauthorized use by a third party every time you insert the docomo mini UIM card into the terminal or when the terminal is powered on. Entering the PIN code enables making/receiving calls and terminal operation.

- If you use a newly purchased terminal with docomo mini UIM card you have been using, use the PIN code set on the former terminal. If you did not change the setting, the code is "0000".
- If you enter a wrong PIN code 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked and cannot be used anymore. In this case, unlock with "Personal Unblocking Key (PUK code)" (P.218).

Personal Unblocking Key (PUK code)

The PUK code is an 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you failed to enter PUK code 10 times consecutively, the docomo mini UIM card is locked. Please contact a docomo Shop.

Enabling SIM card lock

By setting PIN (security code) and entering PIN code when powered on, you can protect the docomo mini UIM card from improper use.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Security]▶[Set up SIM card lock]▶[Lock SIM card].**

2 **Enter PIN code and tap [OK].**
- "Lock SIM card" is marked.

❖**Information**
- You can unlock SIM card lock by the same operation.

Entering the PIN code when powered on

1 **On the PIN code entry screen, enter the PIN code.**

2 **Tap [OK].**

Changing the PIN code

- You can change only when you activate the SIM card lock.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Security]▶[Set up SIM card lock]▶[Change SIM PIN].

2 Enter the current PIN code and tap [OK].

3 Enter a new PIN code and tap [OK].

4 Enter a new PIN code again and tap [OK].

Unlocking PIN lock

1 Tap [PUK code] field and enter PUK code.

2 Tap the [New PIN Code] field and enter a new PIN code and tap [OK].

3 Enter a new PIN code again and tap [OK].

Screen lock

You can secure your data by requiring a screen unlock pattern every time the terminal is turned on or every time it is activated from sleep mode.
There are 5 types of screen lock settings: "Swipe/Touch", "Face Unlock", "Pattern", "PIN" and "Password" (P.219).

Setting screen unlock method

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Security]▶[Screen lock].

2 Tap any of [Swipe/Touch]/[Face Unlock]/[Pattern]/[PIN]/ [Password].

- When you tap [Face Unlock], follow the onscreen instructions to set face authentication. For unlocking when the Face Unlock cannot be unlocked, "Pattern" or "PIN" is required to select to set.
- When you tap [Pattern], follow the onscreen instructions to enter unlock pattern.
  Set security question and answer in case you forget the pattern.

Settings 219

- When you tap [PIN], follow the onscreen instructions to enter 4 - 16 digit numbers. This "PIN" code is different from a PIN code to be set to docomo mini UIM card (P.218).
- When you tap [Password], follow the onscreen instructions to enter 4 - 16 digit characters including alphabets.

Changing screen unlock method

1. **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Security]▶[Screen lock].**

2. **Enter the current unlock pattern/PIN/password.**

3. **Select a new unlock method.**
   - For details, see Step 2 in "Setting screen unlock method" (P.219).

Locking the screen

Once screen unlock method (P.219) is set, the screen is locked when the sleep mode is set or ⓞ is pressed.

Unlocking the screen lock

1. **Press ⓞ to turn the backlight on.**

2. **Enter unlock screen method.**
   - Enter the set unlock method (Flick or Tap/Face Unlock/Pattern/PIN/Password).

If you forget how to unlock

■ If you set "Pattern"
"Incorrect pattern" appears when you enter incorrect unlock pattern 5 times consecutively.
   - Tap [Next] and "Security question" screen appears. Answer the security question that you set for the unlock pattern setting, and tap [Unlock] to unlock the screen lock.
   - If you set Google account, on the "Incorrect pattern" screen, tap [Next] to display "Unlock screen" screen.
      - Mark "Answer question" and tap [Next], and answer the security question, then tap [Unlock] to unlock the screen lock.
      - Mark "Enter Google account details", tap [Next], and enter Google account and password, then tap [Sign in] to unlock the screen lock.
   - When setting new unlock pattern after unlocking screen lock, "Screen unlocked" appears. Tap [Yes] to reset unlock pattern.

- Tap [Try again] to retry entering pattern in 30 seconds.
- When you tap [Try again]▶[Forgot pattern?], "Security question" screen or "Unlock screen" screen appears.
- If you set multiple Google accounts, enter one of those accounts and password to unlock the screen.

■ **If you set "PIN" or "Password"**
Please contact a docomo Shop.

Canceling screen lock

You can cancel screen lock pattern after you set.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Security]▶[Screen lock].**

2 **Enter the current unlock pattern/ PIN/password.**

3 **Tap [None].**

Permitting downloading unknown sources application

- Before you can download unknown source's applications, set the terminal to enable downloading.
  Applications you download may be of unknown origin. To protect your terminal and personal data, only download applications from trusted sources such as the Google Play etc.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Security].**

2 **Tap [Unknown sources].**

3 **Read the notes and then tap [OK].**
- "Unknown sources" is marked.

Language & input

You can select language and input method.

Language	P.222
Spell checker	Set spell checker.
Personal dictionary	Register words.
Default	Set input method.
Google voice typing	P.75
Moji-Henshu	
Xperia™ Chinese keyboard	
Xperia™ Japanese keyboard	
Xperia™ keyboard	
Voice Search	P.222
Text-to-speech output	P.222
Pointer speed	Set pointer speed of mouse etc.

Changing phone language

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Language & input]▶[Language].

2 Select a language and tap [OK].
   - When you select Japanese, "OK" is displayed, but its display varies by the language you selected.

❖**Information**
- If you choose the wrong language and cannot read the menu texts, see the FAQ of the following website. http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/so-04e/faq.html (In Japanese only)

Setting Voice Search

Language	Select language used for Google voice search.
Speech output	Set voice input as always used or for handsfree use only.
Block offensive words	Set whether to display recognized offensive voice results.
Download offline speech recognition	Download voice recognition data for offline use.

* If the phone language is set to "English (United States)", "Hotword detection" appears in the list.

Text-to-speech settings

Google Text-to-speech Engine*	Set language for text-to speech and audio synthesis engine to read out text.
Pico TTS*	Make settings for installed voice synthesis engine.
Speech rate	Set speed at reading out text.
Listen to an example	Playback sample of audio synthesis.

* Japanese is not supported.

Backup & reset

Set backup of application etc. or restore the terminal to default by using Google account.

Back up my data	Set to backup applications, settings, data, etc. to Google server.
Backup account	Set an account for backup to Google server.
Automatic restore	Set to restore backup settings or data when re-installing application.
Data transfer mode	Set to the mode to transfer the data in the terminal using the docomo shop terminal.
Factory data reset	P.223

Resetting the terminal

Resetting the terminal deletes all data, including downloaded applications and accounts, and resets the terminal back to the initial (default) state. Make sure to back up important data you have on the terminal before you reset the terminal.
For the initial settings, see "Initial settings" (P.39).

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Backup & reset]▶[Factory data reset]▶[Reset phone].
  • Mark "Erase internal storage" to delete all contents (music, photos, videos, etc.) on the internal storage.
  • Enter your screen unlock method as required.

2 Tap [Erase everything].
  • The terminal restarts automatically and the initial setting screen appears.

❖**Information**
• While the terminal is restarting or resetting, wait for a while. If the battery pack is removed while restarting or resetting, the terminal may malfunction.

Setup guide

Display Setup guide and make the terminal settings.
• For details, see "Initial settings" (P.39).

ACCOUNTS

Setting an account

You can manage (add or delete) online service accounts or synchronize contacts, messages, etc. saved in online services with the terminal.

Setting Google account

You can create a Google account on your terminal and use Google services such as Gmail, Google Talk, Google Calendar, Google Play, etc.
You can set multiple Google accounts on the terminal.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Add account]▶[Google].

2 Follow the registration wizard, set a Google account.
  • If you have no Google account, create an account.
  • If you have already the Google account, sign in.

❖Information

- You can use the terminal without creating your Google account, however the services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc. are not available.
- To log in, you need a Google account and a password.
- When you sign in, "Backup and restore" screen may appear. To back up applications, bookmark settings, etc. using a Google account, mark "Keep this phone backed up with my Google Account" and then tap ▶.
- Tap set Google account and synchronize each data from the following items manually.

Sync Browser	Synchronize browser settings saved in Google account such as bookmarks with web function of the terminal.
Sync Calendar	Synchronize calendar information such as schedule, etc., stored in Google account with Calendar in the terminal.
Sync Contacts	Synchronize contacts stored in Gmail with the phonebook stored in the terminal.
Sync Gmail	Synchronize contacts stored in Gmail with the Email history stored in the terminal.
Sync Google Photos*	Synchronize web album Google Photos with album in the terminal.
Sync Google Play Books	Synchronize with Google Play Books.
Sync Google Play Movies & TV	Synchronize with Google Play movies.

* If a lot of photos are included to Picasa web album used in Google account or web album uploaded by Google+, it may consume a lot of battery power or increase data communication volume during the synchronization.

- If you set a Google account and use Google+ in it, "Sync Google+" appears. Tap it to synchronize and display instant upload photos in the Album in the terminal.
- Make sure to check if the data connection is available before sign in to the Google account. For checking the data connection status, see "Status icon" (P.44).

Setting Facebook account

When you register or sign in Facebook, you can display profile information published by online "Friends" to the phonebook.

❖Information
- If you do not have a Facebook account, you can also create a new account in the following website. http://www.facebook.com

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Add account]▶[Facebook].**
- If you already have a Facebook account and set account from the phonebook etc. of the terminal, you need not add a new account.

2 **Enter your sign in information.**
- If you have no Facebook account, register an account.
- If you have Facebook account, sign in.

■ Setting Xperia™ with Facebook
Set Facebook account to display 📘 in the status bar. Drag the status bar downwards and set "Xperia™ with Facebook" to synchronize functions of applications in the terminal.

1 Drag the status bar downwards and tap [Xperia™ with Facebook].

2 Tap [Done].

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, from the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Add account]▶[Xperia™ with Facebook].
- Tap the set account to set the following items.

Sync Calendar	Synchronize events such as Friends' birthdays, etc., stored in Facebook with Calendar in the terminal.
Sync Contacts	Synchronize profile of Friends stored in Facebook with the phonebook stored in the terminal.
Sync Friends' music	Synchronize music that Friends specified "Like" in Facebook with WALKMAN in the terminal.

- Tap "Xperia™ with Facebook" account and [Application control settings], then mark each function to synchronize applications in the terminal and Facebook.

Setting other account

You can set docomo account, Email, Corporate (Exchange ActiveSync), etc. other than Google account (P.223) or Facebook account (P.224).

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Add account].

2 Tap an account type.
- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖**Information**
- Use docomo account when you use "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" app (P.191) provided by NTT DOCOMO. docomo account is set by default.

Removing account

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), select an account type and then select an account you want to delete.

2 Tap 🔅 , then tap [Remove account]▶[Remove account].

❖**Information**
- A Google account registered by marking "Keep this phone backed up with my Google Account" on the "Backup and restore" screen is registered as a backup account. When a backup account is removed, caution appears on the status bar.
- docomo account cannot be deleted.

Setting Auto-sync

Synchronize information of online service with the terminal. You can display and edit information on the terminal or a PC.

・ You need to set your online service account (Google account, Facebook account, etc.) in the terminal to synchronize in advance.

1   From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Data usage].

2   Tap ▤ and [Auto-sync data], then read the notes and then tap [OK].
・ "Auto-sync data" is marked.

❖**Information**
・ To change online service items for synchronizing, from the Settings screen (P.194), select an account type. Select an account to change and mark items to be synchronized.

❖**Note**
・ Setting Auto-sync permits to synchronize data of Gmail, calendar, contacts, etc. in the Google account and profile information published by "Friends" etc. set in the online service automatically. These communications may cause you to pay packet communications charges.
・ When Auto-sync is not set, synchronize manually. From the Settings screen (P.194), select an account type. Select an account and tap items to be synchronized.

Canceling synchronization

1   Tap ▤ during a synchronization.

2   Tap [Cancel sync].

SYSTEM

Date & time

You can change the date and time in the terminal.

・ To set date/time or time zone manually, unmark "Automatic date & time" or "Automatic time zone" to disable network-provided time/time zone in advance.

Automatic date & time	Adjust date and time automatically by using network-provided information.
Automatic time zone	Adjust time zone automatically by using network-provided information.
Set date	P.227
Set time	P.227
Select time zone	P.227
Use 24-hour format	P.227
Choose date format	P.227

❖**Information**
- Correction of the time differences may not be performed correctly depending on the overseas network operator. In that case, set time zone manually (P.227).

Setting the date

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Date & time]▶[Set date].**

2 **Drag number to adjust date.**

3 **Tap [Done].**

Setting the time

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Date & time]▶[Set time].**

2 **Drag number to adjust hour and minute.**
- When you unmark "Use 24-hour format", drag "am" or "pm" to switch AM/PM.

3 **Tap [Done].**

Setting the time zone

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Date & time]▶[Select time zone].**

2 **Select time zone you want to set.**

Setting the time format

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Date & time].**

2 **Mark/unmark "Use 24-hour format".**
- Mark the checkbox to shift to 24-hour format, and unmark to shift to 12-hour format.

Setting the date format

1 **From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Date & time]▶[Choose date format].**

2 **Select date format you want to set.**

Accessibility

You can set user support service which sounds or vibrates according to users operation and call end operation.

TalkBack	Set user support service (TalkBack).
Large text	Enlarge text size.
Power button ends call	Set to end a call by pressing ⊚.
Auto-rotate screen	P.41
Speak passwords	Output password by voice sound.
Text-to-speech output	P.222

Touch & hold delay	Set response time for operation of touching and holding the screen.
Enhance web accessibility	Set whether to install script from Google.

❖**Information**
- When TalkBack is turned on for the first time, a message asking if touch exploration function feature is enabled appears.
  Touch exploration is a function that reads or displays an explanation for the item you tapped.
  When touch exploration feature is enabled, you can operate the terminal in the different way from the usual one. To select an item, tap it once and then double-tap it. To drag, trace the screen to desired orientation with 2 fingers.
  To turn off only Touch exploration, from the Settings menu screen (P.194), tap [Accessibility]▶[TalkBack]▶[Settings], then unmark "Explore by touch".

Developer options

Make settings for developing applications or set whether to use debug function.

1 From the Settings screen (P.194), tap [Developer options].

2 Tap ⚪ in Developer options or drag it right.

3 Read the notes and then tap [OK].

About phone

You can check your own phone number, battery status, legal information, etc.

Software Update	P.270
Application update	Download new applications or update applications.
Status	Check your own phone number, battery status, battery level, etc.
Legal information	Check open source license or Google terms of use, etc.
Model number	Check version and number.
Android version	
Baseband version	
Kernel version	
Build number	

Storage structure

Phone (Internal storage)

Folders in the internal storage by default are as follows.

- Displayed folders may differ depending on the terminal operations.

Android	Stores setting data for system or each application, temporary files, etc.
Notifications	Stores notification files used by Google+. Also, stores music data etc. you want to set as notification sound.
com.sonyericsson. notes	Stores a part of information of "Notes" application. If you delete this folder, the data may not be displayed correctly.
image	Stores still image data.
Music	Stores music data.
video	Stores video data.

microSD card (External storage)

You can save data in the terminal to microSD card or import data from the microSD card to the terminal. You can use microSD card for any other compatible devices.

- The terminal supports microSD card of up to 2GB, and microSDHC card of up to 32GB, microSDXC card of up to 64GB (As of April, 2013).
- For compatible microSD cards, contact manufacturers of microSD cards.
- A microSDXC card can be used only on a compatible device. Inserting a microSDXC card into a non-microSDXC-compatible device may damage or destroy data saved on the microSDXC card. Do not insert one.
- If you want to reuse a microSDXC card on which data is destroyed, format microSDXC card (all data will be erased) on an SDXC-compatible device.
- When copying data to/from a non-SDXC-compatible device, use a card (microSDHC card or microSD card) complying with standards of device to share data.

- When installing/removing the microSD card, make sure to power off the terminal (P.38). Do not attach an AC adapter.
- For removing/attaching the back cover, see "To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness" (P.24, P.25).

Inserting microSD card

1 **Hook the groove on the bottom of the terminal with your fingertip and lift up the back cover to remove.**

2 **Remove the battery pack, check the orientation of the microSD card, then slowly insert it straight into the holder.**
- Insert the microSD card with metal contacts side down.
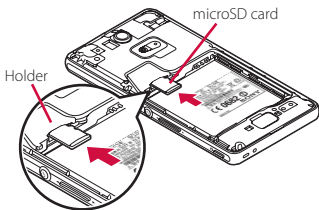
microSD card

Holder

3 **Install the battery pack and attach the back cover, then make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover.**

Removing microSD card

1 **Hook the groove on the bottom of the terminal with your fingertip and lift up the back cover to remove.**

2 **Remove the battery pack, press the microSD card with your fingertip, then slip it out to remove.**
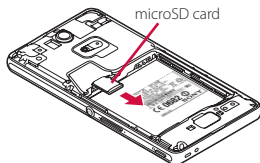
microSD card

3 **Install the battery pack and attach the back cover, then make sure that there are no gaps between the terminal and the back cover.**

File operations

Use "File Commander" application to display or manage various data such as still images, videos, music, etc. saved to the terminal or the microSD card.

❖**Information**
· When you activate for the first time, a screen for registering name etc. appears. Select "Register later" or "Register now".
  When you select [Register later] and register to File Commander later, from the Home screen, tap [::], then [File Commander]▶[Help]▶[Register].

Operating files or folders

Displaying/Playing file

1 From the Home screen, tap [::], then tap [File Commander].
  · Item list appears.
  · By default, "Downloads", "Pictures", "Music", "Videos", "Internal storage", "Remote files" are displayed.
  · When a microSD card is attached, "Sdcard1" appears.

2 Select an item, then tap a folder as required.

3 Tap a file you want to use.
  · The file is displayed/played.

Creating new folder

1 From the Home screen, tap [::], then tap [File Commander].

2 Select an item, then tap a folder as required.

3 Tap [New]▶[Folder].

4 Enter a folder name, then tap [OK].

Renaming folder or file

1 From the Home screen, tap [::], then tap [File Commander].

2 Touch and hold a folder or file you want to rename.

3 Tap [Rename], then enter a folder name or file name.

4 Tap [OK].

Deleting folder or file

1 From the Home screen, tap 🏭, then tap [File Commander].

2 Select an item, then tap a folder as required.

3 Mark a folder or file you want to delete.

4 Tap [Delete]▶[OK].
• Alternatively, touch and hold a folder or file, then tap [Delete]▶[OK].

Moving/Copying folder or file

1 From the Home screen, tap 🏭, then tap [File Commander].

2 Select an item, then tap a folder as required.

3 Mark a folder or file to move/copy, then tap [Cut]/[Copy].

4 Tap ⬅ until the File Commander screen appears.

5 Tap [Edit]▶[Paste] anywhere.

Searching for data

1 From the Home screen, tap 🏭, then tap [File Commander].

2 Tap [Find] and enter a folder name or file name.
• Search suggestions appear as you enter a character.

Using infrared communication

You can send/receive data to/from a device with infrared communication function such as a mobile phone.

- The communication range for infrared communication is 20 cm or less. Keep the devices pointing at the infrared data port each other, and do not move them until data exchange completes.
- If the infrared data port is soiled, clean the data port with a dry soft cloth to prevent from scratching. Performing infrared communication with the data port soiled or scratched may cause communication failure.
- Infrared communication may not be performed in areas exposed to direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lights or near infrared devices.
- Depending on the terminal of the other party, it may be difficult to exchange data.

Within 20cm

Within ±15° from the center
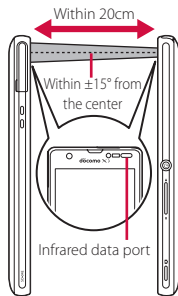
Infrared data port

❖**Information**

- Do not cover the infrared data port with the fingers, etc. while performing infrared communication.
- Infrared communication for the terminal conforms to IrMC version 1.1. However, some data cannot be sent or received even if the receiver's phone conforms IrMC version 1.1.
- Authentication password and docomo apps password may be required while sending or receiving infrared data. Authentication password is a 4-digit number fixed up between you and other party in advance. The same number string must be entered by the sender and receiver. For the docomo apps password, see "docomo apps password" (P.215).
- If the terminal receives a call during infrared communication, data exchange is interrupted and the incoming call screen appears.
- If the set alarm time comes during infrared communication, data exchange is interrupted and the alarm starts to sound.
- ![icon] is displayed in the status bar during infrared communication.

- You can send and receive Phonebook entries, My profile, name card, sp-mode mail, Schedule & memo, still images (.jpeg, .png, .gif, .bmp), videos (.mp4, .3gp) and ToruCa. It may take a time to exchange data depending on the data amount or device of other party.
- Some data, such as data with copyright protection, etc., cannot be played back on other devices.
- Received data cannot be played back or saved depending on the sender's device, data type or data amount.
- The received data is saved on the internal storage.

Sending data via infrared communication

Use the "Infrared" application to send all data of "Phonebook", "sp-mode mail" or "Schedule&Memo". You can also send data one by one or send a still image or a video using the sharing menu of applications such as "docomo phonebook", "Album".

■ Sending with "Infrared" application

1　From the Home screen, tap 📱, then tap [Infrared].

2　Tap [Send all].

3　Tap [Phonebook]/[sp-mode mail]/ [Schedule&Memo].
- When you tap [sp-mode mail], select any of "Inbox"/"Sent"/"Unsent".

4　Tap [Start].

5　Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].

6　Enter the same authentication password as that of the recipient and tap [OK]▶[OK]▶[OK].

■ Sending with sharing menu of function

1　Select "Infrared" from the sharing menu of each application.

❖**Information**
- My profile (excluding name card) can be sent using infrared communication widget. From the Home screen, tap 📱 of 📱📱 (infrared communication widget) and follow the onscreen instructions.
- For instructions on sending from the "docomo phonebook" application, see "Sending phonebook entries via infrared communication" (P.111).
- For instructions on sending from "Album" application, see "Sharing image files" (P.176).
- You cannot send two or more items of My profile, name card, still image, video or ToruCa at a time.

Receiving data via infrared communication

■ Receiving 1 item

1 **From the Home screen, tap [icon], then tap [Infrared].**

2 **Tap [Receive]▶[OK].**

3 **When receiving is complete, tap [OK]▶[OK].**

■ Receiving all items

1 **From the Home screen, tap [icon], then tap [Infrared].**

2 **Tap [Receive all].**

3 **Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].**

4 **Enter the same authentication password as that of the sender and tap [OK]▶[OK]▶[OK]▶[OK].**

❖**Information**

• 1 item of data can be received using infrared communication widget. From the Home screen, tap [icon] of [icon] (infrared communication widget) and follow the onscreen instructions.
• When phonebook entries, sp-mode mail and schedule & memo are received, data on the terminal is deleted before saved.
• You cannot receive two or more videos at a time.
• You may not save received data if the phone memory is full.
• A file name may be changed when saving. A file named with 127 characters or more (Unicode) may not be saved properly.

Using Bluetooth function

Bluetooth function is a technology which enables to connect with Bluetooth device such as PC, handsfree headset wirelessly. To communicate with Bluetooth device, turn Bluetooth function on and pair or connect the terminal and the Bluetooth device.

❖**Information**
- By default, Bluetooth function is off. If you turn Bluetooth on and then turn off the terminal, Bluetooth function turns off. When you turn on the terminal again, Bluetooth function turns on automatically.
- When you do not use Bluetooth function, turn it off to save the battery.

■ Reception interference caused by wireless LAN devices

The terminal's Bluetooth function and wireless LAN devices use the same frequency band (2.4GHz). If you use the terminal near a wireless LAN device, reception interference may occur or the communications speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem. In these cases, do the following:
- Keep the Bluetooth device 10 meters or more away from a wireless LAN device.

- Within 10 meters, turn off either the Bluetooth device or the wireless LAN device.
* The terminal does not communicate wirelessly with all types of Bluetooth devices. Bluetooth DUN is not supported.

Making the terminal detectable with the Bluetooth function on

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📇, then tap [Settings].**

2 **Tap 🔘 in Bluetooth or drag it right.**
- 🔵 appears on the status bar and Bluetooth function turns on.

3 **Tap [Bluetooth].**

4 **Tap [Xperia A].**
- The terminal becomes detectable by other Bluetooth devices for 2 minutes.

❖**Information**
- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Bluetooth] to set Bluetooth function to on/off.

Entering the terminal name

You can name the terminal. The name appears on Bluetooth devices when you use the Bluetooth function.

1 **Make sure that the Bluetooth function is on.**

2 **From the Home screen, tap 🔡 and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].**

3 **Tap 🔢 and tap [Rename phone].**

4 **Enter a name and tap [Rename].**

Making pair setting for the terminal and Bluetooth device

To connect the terminal and Bluetooth device, make pair setting for Bluetooth device. When paired and connected, you can make/receive a call with handsfree headset etc., or send/receive data such as image between the terminal and the Bluetooth device.

• Once you have made pair setting for the terminal and a Bluetooth device, the setting is saved.

• For make pair setting, entering passcode (PIN) may be required. Passcode (PIN) of the terminal is "0000". If you cannot make pair setting when you enter "0000", see the documentation of your Bluetooth device.

• Once you made pair settings by entering passcode (PIN), you do not need to enter the passcode (PIN) when connecting with the paired Bluetooth device next time.

• For Bluetooth profiles compatible with the terminal, see "Main specification" (P.276).

1 **Make sure that the Bluetooth function is on.**

2 **From the Home screen, tap 🔡 and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].**

3 **Tap [Search for devices].**
• A list of detected Bluetooth devices appears.

4 **Tap a Bluetooth device name to pair with the terminal.**

5 **Check a passkey on the "Bluetooth pairing request" screen, then tap [Pair].**
   - You can use the Bluetooth device that has been paired.
   - Some Bluetooth devices make connections continuously after making pair setting.
   - Authentication passcode (PIN) may be required on the "Bluetooth pairing request" screen.

❖**Information**
- Make sure that the Bluetooth function and Bluetooth detection function of the target device are on.
- When you make pair setting with the Bluetooth device supporting Secure Simple Pairing (SSP) function, a passkey appears on the screen. Check the passkey and make the pair setting.

Connecting the terminal with Bluetooth device

1 **Make sure that the Bluetooth function is on.**

2 **From the Home screen, tap 🔢 and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].**

3 **Tap [Search for devices].**
   - A list of detected Bluetooth devices appears.
   - Pair with Bluetooth device as required.

4 **Tap the name of Bluetooth device you want to connect.**
   - While connecting to a device, 🔵 appears in the status bar and the connection status appears under the device name.

❖**Information**
- Tap 🔧 on the name of connected Bluetooth device to check the status of that Bluetooth device or change the settings.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth device

1 **From the Home screen, tap 🔢 and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].**

2 **Tap the connected Bluetooth device name.**

3 **Tap [OK].**
   - To reconnect, tap the device name.

Canceling the pair setting of a Bluetooth device

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦ and tap [Settings]▸[Bluetooth].

2 Tap ⚙ in a Bluetooth device name to unpair and tap [Unpair].
   • Connection disconnects and the pair setting is canceled.

Sending/receiving data using Bluetooth function

• Turn the Bluetooth function on before pairing with the other party's Bluetooth device.

Receiving data via Bluetooth function

1 Send data from a Bluetooth device.
   • 📶 appears on the status bar.

2 Drag the status bar downwards and tap [Bluetooth share: Incoming file]▸[Accept].
   • When receiving is complete, a message indicating that the data is received appears.

Sending data via Bluetooth function

1 Select "Bluetooth" from the sharing menu of each application.

2 Tap the other party's Bluetooth device.
   • When sending is complete, a message indicating that the data is sent appears.

❖**Information**
• For instructions on sending from the "docomo phonebook" application, see "Sending phonebook via Bluetooth/Email/Gmail" (P.111).
• For instructions on sending from "Album" application, see "Sharing image files" (P.176).

Using NFC communication

Sending/receiving data by one-touch function

You can send/receive data to/from a device with NFC such as a mobile phone. If you use the one-touch function with a Sony product with NFC, simple operations allow you to send or receive images, music, photos or videos taken with the terminal.
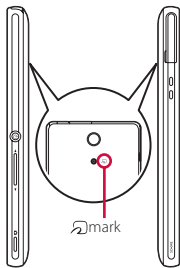
Ⓝmark

- Enable NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function in advance (P.240).
- Place 2 mobile phones in parallel position and point Ⓝ marks to each other. Do not move them until sending/receiving is complete.

- Operations to send/receive and available data to send/receive depend on the compatible applications. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- If the License agreement screen appears when sending/receiving data, read the content and follow the onscreen instructions.
- Even if Ⓝ marks are pointed to each other, sending/receiving may fail. If failed, perform operations of sending/receiving again.
- The terminal does not communicate with all NFC devices.
- For notes when holding over the other device, see "Notes on holding the mark over the other device such as a reader or device with the NFC module" (P.137).

Enabling NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function

1 From the Home screen, tap 📱, then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

2 [NFC / Osaifu-Keitai settings]▶[Reader/Writer, P2P]▶[OK].
   - "Reader/Writer, P2P" and "Android Beam" are marked.
   - NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function is enabled, and 🅽 appears in the status bar.

• Alternatively, from the Home screen, use NFC Quick Launch to enable/disable NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function.

Sending data

1 Make sure that the NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function is enabled.

2 Display data to send on the screen.

3 Face the ⌒ marks on the terminal and the receiver's terminal each other.
• The displayed screen becomes small, and "Touch to beam" appears.

4 Tap the screen.

Receiving data

1 Make sure that the NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function is enabled.

2 Face the ⌒ marks on the terminal and the receiver's terminal each other.
• When data is received, an application that supports the data opens. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Connecting to PC

Connecting to a PC with microUSB cable

By connecting the terminal and a PC with the Micro USB Cable 01 (optional), the internal storage and a microSD card in the terminal are recognized by the PC and you can operate such as copying, moving, deleting the data.

- You may not be able to copy, move, delete, etc. copyrighted data of images, music, etc.

❖**Information**
- The following operating systems (OS) are supported.
  - Microsoft Windows 8
  - Microsoft Windows 7
  - Microsoft Windows Vista
  - Microsoft Windows XP
- The terminal is connected by "Media transfer mode (MTP)" which is set by default.

Connecting the terminal and a PC using a microUSB cable

- For using Mass storage mode (MSC) etc., attach a microSD card to the terminal (P.230).

1 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable (P.36).
   - When you connect microUSB cable for the first time, the driver software for the terminal is installed to a PC. Wait for a while until installation is completed.
   - When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Skip].

   ■ Media transfer mode (MTP)
   "Internal storage & SD card" appears in the status bar of the terminal. The terminal is displayed on the PC screen as a portable device.
   You can access the internal storage and a microSD card in the terminal.

   ■ Mass storage mode (MSC)
   "SD card connected" appears in the status bar of the terminal. The terminal is displayed on the PC screen as a removable disc.
   You can access the microSD card.

❖**Information**
- Screen that appears when connecting to a PC may vary depending on the operating system (OS) of a PC.
- From the Home screen, tap ▦ and tap [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶ [USB Connectivity] to check connection mode and change the settings as follows.

Install PC Companion	Display PC Companion installation wizard when connected to a PC (P.273).
USB connection mode	Switch USB connection mode to "Media transfer mode (MTP)"/ "Mass storage mode (MSC)" when connecting to a PC.
TRUSTED DEVICES	Connect the terminal and a host device in a pair via Wi-Fi network (P.244).

- When you connect the terminal to a PC switching USB connection mode to "Mass storage mode (MSC)", you cannot access the microSD card for the terminal. Some functions using microSD card for the applications such as "Camera" or "Album" may not be available.
- When the terminal is connected to a PC, charging starts automatically. For details, see "Charging with a PC" (P.36).
- Install PC Companion by tapping [Install] on the "PC Companion software" screen to perform software update of the terminal on the connected PC (P.273). Also, you can use the following applications for managing media files, making backup files, etc. by connecting to a PC. For details, check PC Companion screen after installation.

Support Zone	Update software of the terminal by connecting to a PC (P.273).
Contacts Setup	Copy the contacts data of the mobile phone previously used to the terminal.
Media Go	P.244
Sync Zone	Synchronize phonebook or calendar between a PC or Google and the terminal.
Back up & Restore	Back up the terminal data or move the data to another terminal.
File Manager	Check file type, update time, location, etc. on the terminal.

Disconnecting the microUSB cable safely

- Do not disconnect the microUSB cable during data transferring. Data may be damaged.

■ Media transfer mode (MTP)

1 Confirm that it is not transferring data, disconnect the microUSB cable.

■ Mass storage mode (MSC)

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap [SD card connected].
  - "SD card disconnected" appears in the status bar.

3 Disconnect the microUSB cable.

Using Media Go

The Media Go computer application helps you transfer and manage media content in the terminal and PC.
With Media Go, you can load music from a CD to a PC and transfer to the terminal.
- You can install Media Go from PC Companion. Activate PC Companion installed in a PC and install Media Go with "Sony PC Companion" screen. For information on how to install PC Companion, see "When PC Companion is not installed on your PC" (P.273).
- To learn more about how to use the Media Go application, click "Help" on the Media Go window on a PC and then click "Media Go Help".

❖**Information**
- You can also download Media Go from the following website.
  http://mediago.sony.com/enu/features

Connecting the terminal to a PC on a Wi-Fi network

If the terminal and a PC[*] are connected in a pair on a Wi-Fi network, automatic connection/disconnection of internal storage of the terminal with a PC is enabled when the terminal user comes in and out of the Wi-Fi area. You can easily access to files in the internal storage of the terminal from a connected PC.
* Use Microsoft Windows 7 or Microsoft Windows 8 to make a pair setting. Pair setting cannot be made under Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Vista or other OS.

1 Connect a PC you want to set in a pair to a Wi-Fi network.

2 Connect the terminal to a Wi-Fi network (P.195).

3 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.
- When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Skip].

4 Make sure that the terminal is displayed as a portable device on "コンピュータ (Computer of the PC screen)".

5 **Right-click the portable device icon, then click "ネットワーク構成 (Network composition)".**

6 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

7 **On the pop-up screen of the terminal, tap [Pair].**

8 **On the "ポータブルデバイスのネットワーク構成 (Network composition of the portable device)" screen of the PC, click " 完了 (Done)".**

9 **Disconnect the microUSB cable.**

10 **From the Home screen, tap 📱 and tap [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶ [USB Connectivity]▶"Host name" (PC name) in the "TRUSTED DEVICES" field.**

11 **Tap [Connect].**
  - The terminal and the PC are connected in "Media transfer mode (MTP)" on a Wi-Fi network, and you can exchange data files.

❖**Information**
- From the Home screen, tap 📱 and tap [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶[USB Connectivity] to display "Host name" (PC name) in the "TRUSTED DEVICES" field. To cancel connection setting, tap the host name and [Forget]. Until "Forget" is tapped, the connection setting retains even if you connect/ disconnect repeatedly by coming in and out of a Wi-Fi area.
- If the privacy separator function for Wi-Fi network (access point) is enabled, pair setting cannot be made.

Connecting to DLNA device

Sharing a file with DLNA device

Using Wi-Fi function, you can share media files with other client (DLNA : Digital Living Network Alliance) devices.
Set Wi-Fi connection (P.195) with another client device in advance.

Setting Media server

1 **From the Home screen, tap [::],
then tap [Settings]▶[More...].**

2 **Tap [Media server settings].**
• Media server settings screen appears.
You can set the following items.

SO-04E Change server name	Rename the terminal (server) displayed on a client device.
Share content	Set to connect from a client device to the terminal via Wi-Fi.
PENDING DEVICES	Manage client devices waiting access permissions.
REGISTERED DEVICES	Manage client devices registered to the terminal.

❖**Information**
• On the Media server settings screen, tap [:] and [Wi-Fi settings] to set Wi-Fi connection.

Playing media files in the DLNA device with the terminal

You can share media files on the terminal and DLNA device using Media server function.
• Connect a DLNA device and the terminal via the same Wi-Fi network, and set the permission of access from the terminal for the device in advance.

1 **From the Home screen, tap [::],
then tap [Album]/[Movies]/
[WALKMAN].**

2 **Tap [My albums]/[Devices]/[My music].**

3 **Select a device name to connect,
and select a folder.**

4 **Tap a media file to play it.**

Playing a media file in the terminal with a DLNA device

You can play a media file in the terminal with a DLNA device using Throw function.
• Connect a DLNA device and the terminal via the same Wi-Fi network in advance.
• Setting a permission of access from the terminal in advance may be required on a DLNA device.

1 **From the Home screen, tap [::],
then tap [Album]/[Movies]/
[WALKMAN].**

2 **Tap a file you want to play.**

3 **Tap [:] and [Throw].**
• A device list appears.

4 **Tap a device on the device list.**
• The file is played by a DLNA device.

Connecting to other devices

Connecting TV and activating application from TV launcher

This terminal supports MHL connection. To connect to an MHL compatible TV, insert a commercially available MHL cable into the microUSB jack of the terminal and the MHL jack of the TV.
To connect to an HDMI compatible TV, use a commercially available HDMI connector (MHL adapter) and an HDMI cable etc. to connect to the terminal.
Connect to a TV to display photos and videos on the TV screen.

1 Connect the terminal with the Home screen or Application screen displayed to a TV using an MHL cable.

■ When the Home screen is displayed
- Activate TV launcher automatically.

■ When Application screen is displayed
- [icon], [icon] appears on the status bar. Also, drag the status bar downwards and tap [TV launcher] to activate TV launcher.

2 Switch the TV to MHL input mode.
- The screen of the terminal is shown on the TV screen.

3 Flick an icon left or right to select application you want to use.

❖**Information**
- While MHL is connected, drag the status bar downwards and tap [MHL connected] to make output settings or check using a TV remote control etc.
- On the TV launcher screen, select an album art in WALKMAN at the upper left to display WALKMAN screen.
- On the TV launcher screen, Tap [Home] to display the Home screen of the terminal.
- On the TV launcher screen, tap [Add] or [icon] and tap [Add], then select the desired shortcut to add to the TV launcher screen.
- On the TV launcher screen, tap [icon] and [Rearrange] to rearrange shortcuts on the TV launcher screen.
- On the TV launcher screen, tap [icon] and [Delete] to delete shortcuts on the TV launcher screen.
- Removing the MHL cable from the terminal severs connection, however, TV may remain to MHL input mode or HDMI input mode. Follow the instructions on the TV to switch to digital terrestrial television mode, etc.
- When you do not use MHL connection, remove the MHL cable or HDMI adapter and cancel MHL connection. If the HDMI cable remains connected, the battery may be consumed quickly.
- The terminal does not support resolution 720×576p (50Hz) for MHL output to TV.

- You can operate the TV Launcher screen, the Home screen or applications using a TV remote controller if connecting the following devices.
  - MHL compatible TV supporting Remote Control Protocol (RCP)
  - HDMI compatible TV supporting Consumer Electronic Control (CEC)
  To connect to an HDMI compatible TV, a commercially available HDMI connector (MHL adapter) compatible with RCP is required.
  Some applications may not support remote control operations.

Overview of International roaming (WORLD WING)

With the international roaming (WORLD WING), you can use the terminal without changing phone number or mail address in the service area of the overseas network operator affiliated with DOCOMO. You do not need to change the settings of call and SMS.

■ Supporting networks
The terminal is Class 4. The terminal works in a 3G roaming area and GSM/GPRS service area. Services are also available in countries and areas supporting 3G 850MHz/GSM 850MHz. Check available areas. Use 3G network or GSM/GPRS network overseas because Xi is not available overseas.

■ Before using the terminal overseas, refer to the followings.
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
  - DOCOMO International Services website

❖**Information**
- For Country codes, International call access codes, Universal number international prefix, supported countries/areas and network operators, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services Website.

Available services

Main communication services	3G	3G 850	GSM (GPRS)
Phone	○	○	○
Message (SMS)	○	○	○
Email*	○	○	○
Browser*	○	○	○

* To use data communication during roaming, mark "Data roaming" checkbox in Mobile network settings (P.252).

❖**Information**
- Some services are not available depending on the overseas network operator or network.

Before using

Before leaving Japan

To use the terminal overseas, check the following in Japan.

■ Subscription
- Check if you subscribe WORLD WING. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page.

■ Charging
- For AC adapter for charging overseas travel, use optional "AC Adapter 03" or "AC Adapter 04".

■ Usage charge
- Overseas usage charges (call and packet communication) differ from those in Japan.
- Some applications perform communication automatically. Packet communication charge may be higher. For operations for each application, ask the application provider.

Advance preparation

Network service settings

If you subscribe to network services, you can use network services such as Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, Caller ID Display Request Service, etc., even overseas. However, some network services cannot be used.
- To use network services overseas, you need to set "Remote operation settings" to activate (P.103). You can set Remote operation settings in the country you stay (P.257).
- Even if the setting/canceling operation is available, some network services cannot be used depending on overseas network operators.

After arriving overseas

When you arrive overseas and turn on the terminal, an available network is automatically set.

Connectivity

When you have set "Search mode" to "Automatic" in "Service providers" settings, optimized network is automatically selected (P.252).
When you use a network operator of a country/region covered by the flat-rate service, you can use the service with flat-rate packet communication charges overseas up to the specified upper limit per day. To use this service, subscription of packet flat-rate service in Japan is required. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services Website.

Display

During international roaming, 📶 appears on the status bar.
- You can confirm the name of the connected network operator on the Notification panel.

❖**Note**
- While 📶 appears on the status bar, packet communication is available. Note that packet communication charge may become high.

Date & time settings

When "Automatic date & time", "Automatic time zone" in "Date & time" are marked, the date, time and time differences of the terminal clock are corrected by receiving the information related to time and time differences from the network of overseas network operator you connect to.
- Correction of the time/time differences may not be performed correctly depending on the network of overseas network operator. In that case, set time zone manually.
- Timing of correction varies by the overseas network operator.
- Date & time (P.226)

About inquiries

- For loss or theft of the terminal or docomo mini UIM card, immediately contact DOCOMO from the spot to take the necessary steps for suspending the use. For inquiries, refer to the last page. Note that you are still liable for the call and communication charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.
- For using from land-line phone, entering "International call access code" or "Universal number international prefix" for the country is needed.

After returning to Japan

When you return to Japan, the terminal is connected to DOCOMO network automatically. If connection is failed, perform the following operations.

- Set "Network Mode" to "LTE (preferred)/WCDMA/GSM" (P.252).
- Set "Search mode" to "Automatic" in "Service providers" settings (P.252).

Settings for overseas use

By default, the terminal automatically searches available network and connect to it. To switch network manually, set as follows.

Setting network mode

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔡, then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Network Mode].

3 Select a network mode you use.
- You can select from "LTE/WCDMA" "GSM only" and "LTE (preferred)/WCDMA/GSM". If you select "LTE (preferred)/WCDMA/GSM" to switch available network automatically.

Setting a network operator

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔡, then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Service providers].
- If a note appears, tap [OK].

3 Tap [Search mode]▶[Manual].
- To display available networks, tap [Search networks].

4 From "AVAILABLE NETWORKS", mark a network to use.

❖**Information**
- If you cannot search networks, disable mobile data communication (P.199) and then search again.
- If you set a network manually, the terminal is not reconnected to another network automatically even if you move out of the network area.
- To return to "Automatic", tap [Automatic] in Step 3.

Setting data roaming

1 From the Home screen, tap 🔡, then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks].

3 Tap [Data roaming].

4 Read the note and tap [Yes].
- "Data roaming" checkbox is marked.

Making/receiving calls in the country you stay

When you arrive overseas and turn on the terminal, an available network is automatically set.

- Check that the battery and signal levels are high enough.
- Depending on the network operator, even if the Caller ID notification is active, the caller ID may not be notified or appear properly. In this case, calls cannot be made from the call log.

Making a call to outside country you stay (including Japan)

You can make a call from overseas using the international roaming service.

- You can easily make international calls from the country you stay to Japan or to other countries by entering prefix "+" and then the country code and phone number.

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Dial + (touch and hold [0])▶Country code▶Area code (City code)▶Enter a phone number.**
   - If the area code begins with "0", omit "0". However, "0" may be required to dial to some country or area such as Italy.
   - To call an overseas "WORLD WING" user, enter "81" (Japan) for the country code.

3 **Tap 📞.**

4 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

❖**Information**
- During international roaming, if you make an international call to Japan using "Phone" application, the "International dialing assist" screen appears. You can make a call without entering country code from that screen.
  For details on International dialing assist, see "Setting international dial assistance" (P.256).

Making a call within the country you stay

You can make a call by entering the phone number of the other party's land-line phone or mobile phone in the same way you do in Japan.

1 **From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 **Enter a phone number.**
   • To make a call to land-line phone, enter the area code (city code) + other party's phone number.

3 **Tap 📞.**

4 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

When the other party uses international roaming service, make a call as an international call to Japan even when you stay in the same country as the other party.

Receiving a call in the country you stay

You can receive a call using the international roaming service.

1 **While receiving a call, touch and hold 📞 (left) and drag it to 📞 (right).**

2 **When the call is finished, tap [End call].**

❖**Information**
• When you received a call during the international roaming, regardless of which country the call is from, it is forwarded internationally from Japan. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and the receiver is charged for a reception fee.

■ Having the other party call you
   • Having someone make a call from Japan to the country you stay
     To have the other party make a call from a land-line phone or mobile phone in Japan to the terminal in the country you stay, the other party only needs to dial the phone number as in Japan.

- Having someone make a call from other than Japan to the country you stay.
  You have to receive a call through Japan no matter where you are; therefore, the other party needs to enter the international call access code and "81" (Country code of Japan).
  International access code - 81 - 90 (or 80) - XXXX - XXXX

International roaming settings

Make settings for using international roaming or international calls.

Settings for making/receiving calls overseas

Set restricting incoming calls overseas or using roaming guidance.
- For some overseas network operators, settings may not be made.

Restricting incoming calls for roaming

1 From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap ⋮.

2 Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].

3 Tap [Restricting incoming calls].
- Select items you want to use.

Activate restricting	Tap "Restricting all incomings" or "Restricting incoming of video call/64K data", enter the network security code, and tap [OK].
Deactivate restricting	Enter the network security code and tap [OK].
Check settings	Check the current service settings.

Setting incoming notification on roaming

1 From the Home screen, tap 📞, then tap ⋮.

2 Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].

3 Tap [Incoming notification on roaming].
- Select items you want to use.

Activate incoming call notification	Tap [OK] to activate roaming incoming call notification.
Deactiv. incoming call notification	Tap [OK] to deactivate roaming incoming call notification.
Check settings	Check the current service settings.

Setting roaming guidance

**1   From the Home screen, tap 📞,
    then tap ⋮ .**

**2   Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming
    settings].**

3   Tap [Roaming guidance].
• Select items you want to use.

Activate roaming guidance	Tap [OK] to activate roaming guidance.
Deactivate roaming guidance	Tap [OK] to deactivate roaming guidance.
Check settings	Check the current service settings.

Setting international dial assistance

**1   From the Home screen, tap 📞,
    then tap ⋮ .**

**2   Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming
    settings].**

3   Tap [International dial assist].
• Select items you want to use.

Auto conversion	International prefix or country code is automatically added.
Country code	Tap [OK] to select a country code which will be used for auto conversion.
International prefix	Tap [OK] to select an international prefix which will be used for auto conversion.

Settings Network service (overseas)

Set network service such as voice mail from overseas.

• If you make the settings overseas, you are charged a call fee to Japan from the country you stay.
• For some overseas network operators, settings may not be made.

**1   From the Home screen, tap 📞,
    then tap ⋮ .**

**2   Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming
    settings].**

3   Tap [Network service].
• Select items you want to use. You need to set "Remote operation" to activate (P.103).

Voicemail (charged)	Activate service	Tap [OK].*
	Deactivate service	Tap [OK].*
	Play messages	Tap [OK]. After this step, follow the voice prompts to play the message.
	Settings	Tap [OK].*
	Ring time setting	Tap [OK].*
Incoming call notific. (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Caller ID request (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Roaming guidance (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Remote operation (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Call forwarding (charged)	Activate service	Tap [OK].*
	Deactivate service	Tap [OK].*
	Check settings	Tap [OK].*

* Follow the voice prompts to operate.

Optional and related devices

A variety of optional devices allows you to expand the terminal's capabilities by supporting a wide range of purpose, including personal and business uses.
Some accessories are only available in some areas.
For details, please contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.
For details on optional devices, see the user's manual of each device.

- Back Cover SO22
- Battery Pack SO09
- Carry Case 02
- Pocket charger 01/02
- AC Adapter cable SO03
- AC Adapter 03/04
- DC Adapter 03
- Desktop Holder SO17
- AC Adapter Converter Plug TypeC 01
- Micro USB Cable 01
- Wireless Earphone Set 03
- DriveNetCradle 01
- L-03E[*]

[*] Supports charger function to supply power to the terminal.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

- First, check if the software update is necessary for the terminal. If necessary, perform the software update (P.270).
- When checking the following items not to improve the state, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.

■ Power supply
  Cannot power on the terminal.
  - Check if the battery pack is installed correctly.→P.32
  - Check if the battery is not run out.→P.33

■ Charging
  Cannot charge the terminal.
  (The notification LED does not turn on, or the icon does not indicate charging status.)
  - Check if the battery pack is installed correctly.→P.32
  - Check if the adapter's power plug or cigarette lighter plug is correctly inserted to an outlet or cigarette lighter socket.→P.35

- Check if the adapter cable and the terminal are set correctly.→P.35
- When using the AC Adapter 04 (optional), check if the microUSB plug of the AC adapter is connected to the terminal or supplied desktop holder correctly.→P.34, P.35
- In case of using the desktop holder, are the terminal's contacts for the desktop holder dirty? Clean the contacts with a dry cotton swab etc. if they are dirty.
- When using Micro USB Cable 01 (optional), check if the PC is turned on.
- If you execute calls, communications or other function operations for a long time while charging, the terminal may become hot and the notification LED turns off (charging stops) or charging may not be completed. In this case, wait until the temperature of the terminal drops and charge again.

The notification LED blinks in red and the terminal cannot be operated.
- When the battery level is low, charge the battery pack.→P.33

■ Terminal operation
Become hot while operating/charging.
- While calling, depending on the radio wave condition or call duration time, the terminal may become hot. This condition is not abnormal.
- While operating or charging, or if you watch 1Seg, record video, etc. for a long time while charging the battery pack, the terminal, and adapter may become hot. There is no problem about operation and continue to use it.

The operation time provided by the battery is short.
- Is the terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area? Out of service area, a lot of power is consumed to search available radio waves.
- The operating time of the battery varies depending on the operating environment and the degradation level of the battery pack.→P.33
- The battery pack is a consumable accessory. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces. If the operation time is too short with fully charged state, purchase a specified battery pack.

Power discontinuity/rebooting occurs.

- If terminals of battery pack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off. When it is soiled, clean the terminals of the battery pack with a dry cotton swab etc.

Operations are not possible when tapping or pressing keys.

- Check if the power is turned off.→P.37
- Check if you activate the screen lock.→P.219
- When you cannot cancel the screen lock by flicking up or down (swipe) on the unlock screen, Explore by touch of TalkBack may be set to On. If Explore by touch of TalkBack is enabled, flick (swipe) the screen up or down with 2 fingers.→P.228

The screen reacts slowly when you tap or press keys.

- When large amount of data is saved in the terminal or transferring large-size data between the terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed.

The docomo mini UIM card is not recognized.

- Check if the docomo mini UIM card is attached in the right direction.→P.31

The clock is not on time.

- The clock time may become wrong while turning on the power for a long time. Check if "Automatic date & time" and "Automatic time zone" are set to on and turn the power off and on in a place with strong radio wave conditions.→P.226

The terminal operation is unstable.

- Instability may be caused by applications that you installed after purchasing the terminal. If the symptom is improved when you boot the terminal in safe mode (near default state), uninstalling the installed application may improve the symptom.
  To boot the terminal in safe mode, press and hold ⊚ for over a second with the terminal OFF until XPERIA logo appears, and then touch and hold ◁▷ at the bottom. When safe mode is booted, "Safe mode" is displayed at the lower left of the screen.
  To exit the safe mode, turn power OFF and then ON.
  With the power on, press ⊚ for over a second, then touch and hold [Power off] and tap [OK] to restart the terminal in Safe mode.
- * Back up the necessary data before using safe mode.

- * Some widgets that you created may be removed.
- * Safe mode is not a normal booting state. To use ordinarily, exit the safe mode.
- Developer options are designed for developers. If you set them, the terminal or applications may not be operated correctly.

Applications cannot be operated properly (applications cannot be activated, or errors occur frequently).
- Are there any applications being disabled? Enable disabled applications, then retry.→P.213

■ Phone call
Cannot make a call even if you press the dial button.
- Check if you activate the SIM card lock.→P.218
- Check if you activate Airplane mode.→P.200

The ringtone does not sound.
- Is the call alert volume of volume setting set to silent?→P.206
- Check if the silent mode is active.→P.42
- Is the ring time for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service "0 Sec."?→P.102
- Check if you set call rejection.→P.102

Calls are not connected.
(Even when moving, "圏外 (out of service area)" does not disappear, or although radio waves are available, making/receiving calls is unavailable.)
- Turn the power OFF and ON, or remove and attach the battery pack or docomo mini UIM card.→P.31, P.37
- Due to the nature of radio waves, making/receiving calls may be unavailable even when "not out of service area" or "📶 appears on the display for the radio wave condition". Move to the other place and call again.
- Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/mails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. Move to other place or call again at other time.

■ Display
The display is dim.
- Check if the backlight time-out is set.→P.209
- Check if the brightness of screen is changed.→P.208
- Check if you set Power Saver.→P.211
- Check if you cover the Proximity sensor with sticker etc.→P.29
- When the temperature of the terminal becomes high while using, the display may become darker. It is not abnormal.

■ Sound
During a voice call, the distant party's
voice is hard to listen to or too loud.
  • Check if the listening volume of the sound
    volume setting is changed.→P.100

■ Display data
Images or ringtones set in each feature do
not work and the terminal operates in the
default data.
  • Is the inserted docomo mini UIM card the
    same one that is set when the images or
    ringtones are obtained?

■ Mail
Mail is not received automatically.
  • Check if you set "Inbox check frequency"
    in Account settings to "Manual".→P.121

■ Camera
Still images and video taken with the
camera are blurred.
  • Check if clouds or dirt attach to the lens of
    camera.
  • To shoot a portrait image, use the face
    detection function.→P.170
  • Shoot using shake reducing function.→
    P.161, P.167
  • To shoot a close object, use "Superior
    auto" for the capturing mode.→P.155

■ 1Seg
Watching 1Seg is unavailable.
  • Are you out of terrestrial digital TV
    broadcasting service area or in a place
    where airwave is weak?
  • Is channel set?→P.145

■ Osaifu-Keitai
Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.
  • When removing the battery pack or
    activating Omakase Lock, Osaifu-Keitai
    functions are unavailable regardless of the
    NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock settings.
  • Check if NFC/Osaifu-Keitai is locked.→
    P.137
  • Check if you place 🄼 mark of the terminal
    over an IC card reader?→P.137

■ International roaming
Cannot use the terminal overseas.
  ■ When antenna mark is displayed
  • Do you subscribe WORLD WING?
    Check if you subscribe WORLD WING.

■ Out of service area indicator appears
- Check if you are out of the international roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength. Check if the service area and network operator are available, referring to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- Change the network settings or overseas network operator settings.
  Set "Search mode" to "Automatic" in "Service providers".
  Set "Network Mode" to "LTE (preferred)/ WCDMA/GSM".→P.252
- Turning off the terminal and then turning on again may work for the restoration.→ P.37

Cannot perform data communication overseas.

- Mark "Data roaming".→P.252

The terminal suddenly became unavailable while using overseas.

- Check if usage amount exceeds the limit of maximum charges for use.
  For use of "International roaming (WORLD WING)", the limit of maximum charges for use is set in advance. If exceeding the limit of maximum charges for use, pay the charges.

Cannot receive calls overseas.

- Is "Restricting incoming calls" set to "Activate restricting"?→P.255

No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/ Functions for using contents saved in phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.

- Even if a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on the terminal unless the network or network operator notifies it. And a different caller ID may be notified depending on the network or network operator you use.

■ Data management
Data transfer is not performed.

- Check if USB hub is used. If you use USB hub, operations may not be performed correctly.

Data saved in microSD card is not displayed.

- Remove the microSD card and insert it again.→P.230

When trying to display an image, "×" appears instead of it.
Or "×" appears for the demo play or the preview function.

- "×" may appear instead of destroyed image data.

■ Bluetooth function
The terminal cannot be connected to a Bluetooth communication device/A Bluetooth communication device cannot be found from the terminal.
- Make Bluetooth communication device (commercial item) registering stand-by state and then register the device on the terminal. If you delete already registered device and register the device again as a new device, delete the registrations on both Bluetooth communication device (commercial item) and the terminal and then perform registration of the devices. →P.237

Calls cannot be made from the terminal connecting to external device such as car navigation or handsfree device.
- If calls are made several times when the other party does not answer or is out of service, the call to this number may be disabled. In this case, turn terminal off and on.

■ Map/GPS
Cannot set AUTO-GPS service information.
- Check if the battery level is low and AUTO-GPS function is stopped.
  If AUTO-GPS is stopped by "Low-power operation settings", AUTO-GPS service information cannot be set. In this case, set "Low-power operation settings" to "Not suspend" or charge the battery. →P.33, P.215
- Check if "AUTO-GPS operation settings" is marked. →P.215

Error messages

● No service
  - The terminal is out of service area, or the received signal is too weak. Move to a location where radio signal can be reached.
  - The docomo mini UIM card is not working properly.
    Insert the docomo mini UIM card in another terminal. If this works, it is probably the terminal that is causing the problem. In this case, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only).
    Removing and inserting docomo mini UIM card may improve the problem.

● Mobile network not available
  Insert the docomo mini UIM card correctly and move to a place where radio signal can be reached (P.31).

● Normal calls are restricted by access control.
  Appears when normal voice call service is hard to receive because communication lines are busy.

● Emergency calls are restricted by access control.
  Appears when emergency voice call service is hard to receive because communication lines are busy.

● Calls are restricted by access control
  Appears when normal/emergency voice call service is hard to receive because communication lines are busy.

● SIM card is locked
  Enter your PIN code (P.218) correctly.

● SIM card is PUK-locked
  Enter your PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) (P.218) correctly.

● PIN lock disable code is locked.
  PIN lock disable code is locked. Please contact a docomo Shop.

● The phone storage is full
  There is no memory space. Delete log information etc. in Browser (P.131) or unnecessary applications (P.213) to obtain memory space.

● Memory full.
  There is no memory space in microSD card. Delete unnecessary data to save the memory space (P.232).

Smartphone Anshin Remote Support

By sharing screens of your terminal with NTT DOCOMO, you can receive technical support to make settings (in Japanese only).

- This service is not available when your docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, during international roaming, or in Airplane mode.
- Smartphone Anshin Remote Support is a service requiring subscription.
- Some operations and settings are not supported.
- For details on Smartphone Anshin Remote Support, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

1 Call スマートフォン遠隔サポートセンター (Remote support center for smartphone).

■ スマートフォン遠隔サポートセンター (Remote support center for smartphone)
📞 0120-783-360
Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m., open all year round

2 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [遠隔サポート (Remote support)].

- When you use for the first time, agree to "ソフトウェア使用許諾書 (License Agreement)".

3 Enter connection number notified by DOCOMO.

4 Remote support starts when you are connected.

Warranty and After Sales Services

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty is received with the terminal upon purchase. Check to be sure that "販売店名・お買い上げ日 (the name of the retailer, date of purchase)", and other items have been filled out on the warranty before storing it in a safe place. If any necessary information is not provided, immediately contact the retailer and request to complete the warranty. The terminal comes with a year's free warranty starting from the date of purchase.
- Specifications of this product and its accessories are subject to change for improvement without prior notice.
- Data saved in the Contacts etc. may be changed/lost due to the trouble/repairs or handling of the terminal. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the Phonebook data etc., in case.
- * You can save Phonebook data in a microSD card inserted to the terminal.
- * Data such as phonebook entries can be backed up to Data center using Data Security Service (subscription is required).

After Sales Services

If you have problems with the terminal

Before asking repair, see "Troubleshooting" (P.258) in this manual to check the problem. If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the last page (in Japanese only).

If repair is required resultingly

Bring the terminal to the DOCOMO-specified repair office. However, it must be taken during business hours of the repair office. Make sure to bring a warranty card with the product when you visit the shop. Note that repair may take some days depending on the problem.

■ Within the warranty period
   - We repair the terminal free of charge based on the terms documented in the warranty.
   - When requesting a repair, make sure to bring the warranty card with the terminal. Repair requests that are not accompanied by the warranty or that involve malfunction and damage due to incorrect handling by the owner (damage of liquid crystal, connector, etc.) will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.

- Malfunction due to use of devices and consumable parts other than those specified by DOCOMO will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.

■ Note that repair may be refused in the following cases:
  - When the terminal has corrosion due to wet by liquid, condensation, perspiration, etc. or the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed (we may not be able to repair when the microUSB jack, headset jack, liquid crystal, etc. is damaged or the frame itself is cracked) based on the result of our examination.
    - Even if repair is possible, it will be done at the owner's expense, as this type of corrosion or damage is not covered by the warranty.

■ If the warranty period expires
  We will repair the terminal at the owner's expense.

■ Parts stock period
  The functional parts necessary to repair the terminal will be basically available for a minimum of 4 years after the manufacture is discontinued.
  However, depending on the defective portion, repair may not be possible because of a shortage of repair parts. Note that repair may still be possible depending on the defective portion even if the stock period has expired. Contact "Repairs" on the last page (in Japanese only).

Precautions

● Never modify the terminal or accessories.
  - Doing so may result in fire, injuries or malfunctions.
  - The modified terminal may be repaired only if the owner agrees on that all the modified parts are restored to the original conditions.
    However, repairs may be refused depending on the modifications.
    The following cases may be considered as modifications.
    - Put a seal etc. on the liquid crystal or key part.
    - Glued decorations on the terminal using adhesion bond, etc.
    - Change the parts such as exterior to other than DOCOMO standard parts.

- Malfunction and damage due to modifications will be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
● Do not remove the inscription sticker on the terminal.
  - Note that if the inscription sticker is removed or is replaced with a different sticker, it may disqualify the terminal from repairs.
● Note that the settings and other information may be reset (cleared) as a result of malfunction, repair or other handling. In this case, make the settings again.
● After the repair, Wi-Fi MAC address or Bluetooth address may be changed regardless of the repaired parts.
● A material that generates a magnetic field is used in the following parts of the terminal.
  Do not hold an object that is easily affected by magnetism, such as a cash card, close to the terminal. You may not be able to use the card any more.
  Where it is used: Speaker, earpiece

● The terminal is waterproof. If inside of the terminal gets wet or moist, however, turn the power off, remove the battery pack, then bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the terminal.

Precautions on memory dial (Phonebook function) and downloaded data

Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the terminal. DOCOMO shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DOCOMO may replace your terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it.

Updating software

It is a function to connect network to check if software update for SO-04E is required, then update software if required. You can check if software update is required on NTT DOCOMO, INC. website.

- There are following 3 methods for software update.
  - Automatic Update : Update file is downloaded automatically and write it at the set time. When the rewrite start time is not set, software is automatically rewritten between 2 a.m. and 5 a.m.
  - Immediate Update : Update immediately.
  - Reserved Update : Update at the reserved time automatically.

❖**Information**
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as phonebook entries registered in terminal, images, mails, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DOCOMO recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.

When updating software

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. The update may fail.
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged. You are recommended to connect charging cable when updating software.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases.
  - During a call
  - When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed*
  - During international roaming*
  - Airplane mode*
  - When date and time are not set correctly
  - When the remaining battery is not sufficient for software update
  - When the available memory of the terminal is not sufficient for software update
  - * When the terminal is out of service area or during international roaming, updating software is not available even though you are connected via Wi-Fi.
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- Making/Receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update. Only incoming calls can be answered while downloading.
- Stay in a place with strong radio wave condition when updating software. Software update may be canceled if the radio wave condition is not good enough.

- If software update is not needed, "No update is needed." appears.
- During international roaming or when the terminal is out of service area, "When docomo network is not available, or during roaming, software update is not available even if Wi-Fi is connected." or "When docomo network is not available, or during roaming, install cannot be started even if Wi-Fi is connected." appears. The same messages appear even while connecting via Wi-Fi.
- SMS sent during software update is stored in the SMS center.
- When updating software, your private information concerning SO-04E (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server for software update managed by DOCOMO. DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update has failed, the terminal may not activate or "Update failed." appears and all operations may become unavailable. In that case, please bring the terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- While updating software, do not activate other applications.

Updating software automatically

Update file is automatically downloaded and software is updated at the specified time.

Automatic update setting

- The settings of Software Update is set to "Automatic Update" by default.

1. **From the Home screen, tap [icon] and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software Update].**

2. **Tap [Configure the software update].**

3. **Tap [Automatic Update]/[Manual Update].**

When software update is necessary

If the update file is downloaded automatically, [icon] appears on the status bar.

- When the rewrite start time is reached with [icon] displayed, software is automatically rewritten. When the rewrite start time is not set, software is automatically rewritten between 2 a.m. and 5 a.m.

1. **Drag the status bar to tap notification of Software update.**
   - Rewriting time appears.

2 Perform a target operation.

- [OK] : Go to the Home screen. Updating starts when the preset time is reached.
- "Set Time" : Reserved update→ "Reserving software update" (P.273)
- "Start update" : Update immediately→ "Updating software immediately" (P.272)

❖Information

- If the software is not updated when the update notification is received, ![icon] appears on the status bar to notify.
- If software update at the preset time could not be performed, the software update will be performed at the same time the following day.
- Software cannot be updated automatically when the Auto-update setting is set to "Manual Update" or while updating software by Now update.

Updating software immediately

Software update starts immediately.

- There are 2 ways to activate software update: activating from Software update notice screen and activating from the menu.

1 From the Home screen, tap ![icon] and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software Update].

2 [Start the software update]▶Tap [Yes].

- For activating from Software update notice screen, display the Software update notice screen and tap [Start update].
- "Ready for update. Please refrain from starting other application." is displayed, then rewriting starts automatically. Tap [OK] to start rewriting automatically.
- While updating the software, all key operations become disabled. Also, updating cannot be canceled.
- When the software update is complete, the terminal restarts and the Home screen is displayed.

❖Information

- If software update is not needed, "No update is needed." is displayed.

■ Post-update display
![icon] appears on the status bar. Drag the status bar downwards and tap the notification, a message indicating that software update is complete appears.

Reserving software update

You can preset time to update the software if you want to specify another time for installing the update file.

1 Display the Software update notice screen▶Tap [Set Time].

2 Set a time▶Tap [Set].

■ **When the reserved time is reached**
When the reserved time is reached, "Ready for update. Please refrain from starting other application." appears, then rewriting starts automatically.

❖**Information**
· While updating the software, all key operations become disabled and updating cannot be canceled.
· If software update could not be started at the preset time, the software update will be performed at the same time the following day.
· When an alarm etc. is set at the same time as the reserved time, priority will be given to the software update.
· If SO-04E is turned OFF at the reserved time, the software update starts at the same time as the reserved time after the terminal is turned ON.
· If 🔔 (Software update was suspended Please check the remaining internal storage capacity and retry.) appears on the status bar during software update, make sure that sufficient memory remains on the phone memory and retry to update.

· If 🔔 (Software update was suspended Please check the status of the handset and retry.) appears on the status bar during software update, make sure that the terminal is not in the following states and retry to update.
- No signal
- The battery pack is removed
- Interfered by some function

Connecting to a PC and updating

You can update software by using PC Companion that can be installed into a PC from the terminal.

❖**Information**
· To install PC Companion on a PC, an Internet connection is required.

When PC Companion is not installed on your PC

1 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.

2 When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Install].
· Installer of PC Companion starts on the PC.

3 Follow the onscreen instructions on the PC to install.

- PC Companion starts on the PC after the installation is complete. If further software update is searched, it is automatically notified. Follow the onscreen instructions on the PC.

When PC Companion is installed on your PC

1 Check if PC Companion is activated on the PC. If not, activate PC Companion from the Start menu.

2 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.

3 Follow the onscreen instructions on the PC.

- If available software update is found, it is automatically notified.

When software update is failed

If software update is failed and the terminal does not boot, restore the terminal by performing restoration using PC Companion.

- For restoration details, see FAQ in the following website.
  http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/support/ (In Japanese only)

Main specification

■ The terminal

Product name		SO-04E
Size		Approx. 131mm (H)× approx. 67mm (W)× approx. 10.5mm (T) (thickest part approx. 10.5mm)
Weight		Approx. 141g
Storage		ROM 32GB RAM 2GB
External storage		microSD card of up to 2GB microSDHC card of up to 32GB microSDXC card of up to 64GB (as of April, 2013)
Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 420 hours (stationary)
	GSM	Approx. 360 hours (stationary)
	LTE	Approx. 390 hours (stationary)
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 630 min.
	GSM	Approx. 570 min.

Charging time	AC Adapter 04	Approx. 160 min. (for Desktop Holder SO17 combination use : approx. 150 min.)
	AC Adapter 03	Approx. 210 min. (for Desktop Holder SO17 combination use : approx. 210 min.)
	DC Adapter 03	Approx. 230 min.
1Seg watching time		Approx. 320 min.
Mobacas watching time		Approx. 250 min.
Display	Type	TFT16,777,216 colors
	Size	Approx. 4.6 inch
	Number of dots	Horizontal 720 dots× Vertical 1280 dots
Image pickup device	Type	Camera : Backside-illuminated CMOS Front camera : CMOS
	Size	Camera : 1/3.0 inch Front camera : 1/13.0 inch
Camera pixels		Camera : Effective pixels : Approx. 13,100,000 pixels (Recorded pixels : Approx. 13,000,000 pixels) Front camera : Effective pixels : Approx. 310,000 pixels (Recorded pixels : Approx. 310,000 pixels)

Digital zoom	Camera : Max. approx. 16.0x (41 levels) Front camera : —
Still image capture size	Camera : 4128×3096 (13MP 4:3)*1 3920×2940 (12MP 4:3)*2 3920×2204 (9MP 16:9) 2592×1944 (5MP 4:3) 1920×1080 (2MP 16:9) 640×480 (VGA 4:3) Front camera : 640×480 (VGA)
Video recording size	Video camera : 1920×1080 (Full HD 16:9) 1280×720 (HD 16:9) 640×480 (VGA 4:3) Front video camera : 640×480 (VGA 4:3) 320×240 (QVGA 4:3)
Frame rate	Max. 30 fps
Wireless LAN	Compliant with IEEE802.11a/b/g/n (Corresponding frequency band to IEEE802.11n : 2.4GHz/ 5GHz)

Bluetooth	Supported Bluetooth version	Compliant with Bluetooth standard Ver. 4.0[*3]
	Radio power	Bluetooth standard Power Class 1
	Available communication distance[*4]	Within approx. 10 m
	Supported Bluetooth profile[*5]	HFP, HSP, OPP, SPP, HID, A2DP, AVRCP, PBAP, HDP, PXP, MAP, DID
Headset jack	Size	Diameter 3.5 mm
	Number of pole	Tetrapolar

*1 The figures are image capture sizes when the capturing mode is set to other than "Superior auto", other than "Backlight correction HDR" for "Scene selection", or "Off" for "HDR" in "Normal".
*2 The figures are image capture sizes when the capturing mode is set to "Superior auto", "Backlight correction HDR" for "Scene selection", or "On" for "HDR" in "Normal".
*3 It is confirmed that the terminal sizes and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with Bluetooth standards designated by Bluetooth SIG, and they are authenticated. However, procedures may differ or data transfer may not be possible depending on the device's characteristics or specifications.
*4 May vary by the signal status and/or whether there is an interference between communications devices.
*5 Bluetooth standards for Bluetooth device connection procedure according to the product's applications.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of the operation time for calling when radio signal reception is normal.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the stand-by time when radio signal reception is normal. Stationary continuous stand-by time is the estimated average operation time when radio signal reception is normal.
  In certain circumstances, the stand-by time may drop to as low as half the time shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio signal reception in the area (no reception or weak).
- A use of the Internet reduces the actual call (communication)/stand-by time. Composing messages or activating the camera or applications also reduces call (communication)/stand-by time even if you do not call or use the Internet.
- Charging time is an estimate of the time required to charge a completely empty battery pack. Charging under low temperature requires longer time.

■ Battery pack

Battery type	Lithium Ion Battery
Voltage	DC3.7V
Current	2300 mAh

■ File format

The terminal supports the display or playback of the following file format:

Type	File format
Sound	WAV (PCM, G.711) (.wav), AAC (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), AAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), eAAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), MP3 (.mp3), AMR-NB (.3gp), AMR-WB (.3gp), MIDI (SP-MIDI/GM/GML (.mid), XMF (.xmf), Mobile XMF 1.0 (.mxmf), RTTTL/RTX (.rtttl, .rtx), OTA (.ota), iMelody (.imy)), Ogg Vorbis (.ogg), FLAC (.flac), PIFF (.isma)
Still image*	JPEG (.jpeg, .jpg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp), WEBP (.webp)
Video	H263 (.3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), H264 (.3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), MPEG4 (.3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), VP8 (.webm, .mkv), Xvid (.avi, .xvid, .mkv, .3gp, .3gpp, .mp4, .m4v), WebM (.webm), AVI (.avi), PIFF (.ismv)

* Still images are saved in JPEG format when shot with Camera in the terminal.

■ Numbers of still images (Estimation)

Savable number of shot images to the internal storage	Up to approx. 1,002,800 images
Savable number of shot images to a microSD card (1GB)	Up to approx. 41,940 images

* Shot images with a resolution of 640✕480 (VGA).

■ Time length of shooting video (Estimation)

Savable time of recording to the internal storage	Per video : Up to approx. 254 min. In total : Up to approx. 1,610 min.
Savable time of recording to a microSD card (1GB)	Per video : Up to approx. 63 min. In total : Up to approx. 63 min.

* Time of recording with a resolution of 640✕480 (VGA).

Language

■ Display language

Japanese/Indonesian/Malay/Sundanese/
Bosnian/Catalan/Czech/Danish/German
(Germany)/German (Liechtenstein)/
German (Austria)/German (Switzerland)/
Esthonian/English (Australia)/English
(Canada)/English (Hong Kong)/English
(India)/English (Ireland)/English (Jamaica)/
English (New Zealand)/English
(Philippines)/English (Singapore)/English
(South Africa)/English (United Kingdom)/
English (United States)/Spanish
(Argentina)/Spanish (Bolivia)/Spanish
(Chile)/Spanish (Colombia)/Spanish (Costa
Rica)/Spanish (Ecuador)/Spanish (El
Salvador)/Spanish (Spain)/Spanish (United
states)/Spanish (Guatemala)/Spanish
(Honduras)/Spanish (Mexico)/Spanish
(Nicaragua)/Spanish (Panama)/Spanish
(Paraguay)/Spanish (Peru)/Spanish (Puerto
Rico)/Spanish (Dominican Republic)/
Spanish (Uruguay)/Spanish (Venezuela)/
Basque/French (Belgique)/French
(Canada)/French (France)/French
(Switzerland)/Galician/Croatia/Icelandic/
Italian (Italy)/Italian (Switzerland)/Javanese/
Latvian/Lithuanian/Hungaria/Dutch
(Belgium)/Dutch (Netherlands)/
Norwegian/Polish/Portuguese (Brazil)/
Portuguese (Portugal)/Romanian/Albanian/
Slovak/Slovene/Serbian/Finnish/Swedish/
Tagalog/Vietnamese/Turkish/Greek/
Bulgar/Kazakh/Macedonian/Russian/
Ukrainian/Hindu/Bengalee (Bangladesh)/
Bengalee (India)/Thai/Korean/Telugu/
Kannada/Malayalam/Marathi/Tamil/
Chinese (Traditional)/Chinese (Simplified)/
Chinese (Hong Kong)

■ Text language (Character entry)

Arabic/Icelandic/Albanian/Italian/
Indonesian/Anglo-Indian/Ukrainian/
Esthonian/Dutch/Kazakh/Catalan/Galician/
Greek/Croatian/Javanese/Swedish/
Spanish/Slovak/Slovene/Sundanese/
Serbian/Thai/Tagalog/Czech/Danish/
German/Norwegian/Basque/Hungarian/
Finnish/French/Bulgarian/Vietnamese/
Hebrew word/Persian/Polish/Bosnian/
Portuguese/Macedonian/Malay/Latvian/
Lithuanian/Romanian/Russian/Tamil/
Turkish/Hindu/English/Chinese
(Traditional)/Chinese (Simplified)/Japanese

■ Text language (Voice input)
Japanese/Icelandic/Afrikaans/Arabic (United Arab Emirates)/Arabic (Israel)/Arabic (Egypt)/Arabic (Qatar)/Arabic (Kuwait)/Arabic (Saudi Arabia)/Arabic (Jordan)/Arabic (Lebanon)/Arabic (Bahrain)/Arabic (Oman)/Arabic (Palestine)/Italian/Greek/Indonesian/Dutch/Catalan/Galician/Swedish/isiZulu/Spanish (United States)/Spanish (Argentina)/Spanish (Uruguay)/Spanish (Ecuador)/Spanish (El Salvador)/Spanish (Guatemala)/Spanish (Costa Rica)/Spanish (Colombia)/Spanish (Spain)/Spanish (Chile)/Spanish (Dominican Republic)/Spanish (Nicaragua)/Spanish (Panama)/Spanish (Paraguay)/Spanish (Puerto Rico)/Spanish (Venezuela)/Spanish (Peru)/Spanish (Bolivia)/Spanish (Honduras)/Spanish (Mexico)/Slovak/Serbian/Czech/German/Turkish/Norwegian/Hungarian/Finnish/French/Bulgarian/Hebrew word (Israel)/Polish/Portuguese (Brazil)/Portuguese (Portugal)/Latin/Malay/Romanian/Russian/English (United States)/English (United Kingdom)/English (India)/English (Australia)/English (Canada)/English (New Zealand)/English (South Africa)/English (standard)/Chinese, standard (Taiwan, Traditional)/Chinese, standard (Hong Kong, Simplified)/Chinese, Cantonese (Hong Kong Traditional)/

Chinese, standard (China, Simplified)/Korean

Certificate and compliance

You can check details of certificate and compliance mark specific to the terminal (including certificate number/compliance number).

1 From the Home screen, tap ▦, then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [About phone]▶[Legal information]▶[Certificates].

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phone, etc.

Mobile phone : GSM/GPRS/EDGE 850/900/1800/1900 & UMTS/HSPA B1/5/6/19 & LTE B1/19/21

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phone

This model SO-04E mobile phone complies with Japanese technical regulations and international guidelines regarding exposure to radio waves.

This mobile phone was designed in observance of Japanese technical regulations regarding exposure to radio waves[*1] and limits to exposure to radio waves recommended by a set of equivalent international guidelines. This set of international guidelines was set out by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is in collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO), and the permissible limits include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health condition.

The technical regulations and international guidelines set out limits for radio waves as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, which is the value of absorbed energy in any 10 grams of tissue over a 6-minute period. The SAR limit for mobile phones is 2.0 W/kg. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone when tested for use at the ear is 0.99 W/kg. There may be slight differences between the SAR levels for each product, but they all satisfy the limit.
This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum required to reach the network. Therefore in general, the closer you are to a base station, the lower the power output of the device.

This mobile phone can be used in positions other than against your ear. This mobile phone satisfies the international guidelines when used with a carrying case or a wearable accessory approved by NTT DOCOMO or the manufacturer[*2]. In case you are not using the approved accessory, please use a product that does not contain any metals, and one that positions the mobile phone at least 1.5 cm away from your body.

The World Health Organization has stated that "a large number of studies have been

performed over the last two decades to assess whether mobile phones pose a potential health risk. To date, no adverse health effects have been established as being caused by mobile phone use."
Please refer to the WHO website if you would like more detailed information.
http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts_press/fact_english.htm
Please refer to the websites listed below if you would like more detailed information regarding SAR.
Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications Website:
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses Website:
http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html (in Japanese only)
NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website:
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/sar/
Sony Mobile Communications, Inc. Website:
http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/product/SAR/ (in Japanese only)
*1 Technical regulations are defined by the Ministerial Ordinance Related to Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Radio Equipment Regulations).

*2 Regarding the method of measuring SAR when using mobile phones in positions other than against the ear, international standards (IEC62209-2) were set in March 2010. On the other hand, technical regulation is currently being deliberated on by national council. (As of October, 2011)

Radio Wave Exposure and Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Information

Important Information United States

THIS PHONE MODEL HAS BEEN CERTIFIED INCOMPLIANCE WITH THE GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.
The SO-04E Series mobile phones have been designed to comply with applicable safety requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed to not exceed the limits* of exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by governmental authorities. These limits establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by international scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The standards include a safety margin designed to assure the safety of all individuals, regardless of age and health. The radio wave exposure guidelines employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR).Tests for SAR are conducted using standardized methods with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all used frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phone models, they are all designed to meet the relevant guidelines for exposure to radio waves. For more information on SAR, please refer to the important information chapter in the User Guide.

The highest SAR value as reported to the authorities for this phone model when tested for use by the ear is 1.05 W/kg*, and when worn on the body is 1.42 W/kg*. For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines. Please use an accessory designated for this product or an accessory which contains no metal and which positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

For devices which include "WiFi hotspot" functionality, SAR measurements for the device operating in WiFi hotspot mode were taken using a separation distance of 10 mm.

Use of third-party accessories may result in different SAR levels than those reported.

** Before a phone model is available for sale to the public in the US, it must be tested and certified by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) that it does not exceed the limit established by the government-adopted requirement for safe exposure*. The tests are performed in positions and locations (i.e., by the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this phone model with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones, all mobile phones granted an FCC equipment authorization meet the government requirement for safe exposure. SAR information on this phone model is on file at the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCCID PY7PM-0320. Additional information on SAR can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.ctia.org/.

* In the United States, the SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. The standard incorporates a margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

** This paragraph is only applicable to authorities and customers in the United States.

Europe

This mobile phone model SO-04E has been designed to comply with applicable safety requirements for exposure to radio waves. These requirements are based on scientific guidelines that include safety margins designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The radio wave exposure guidelines employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. Tests for SAR are conducted using standardized methods with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all used frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phone models, they are all designed to meet the relevant guidelines for exposure to radio waves.

For more information on SAR, please refer to the safety chapter in the User's Guide.

SAR data information for residents in countries that have adopted the SAR limit recommended by the International Commission of Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is 2 W/kg averaged over ten (10) gram of tissue (for example European Union, Japan, Brazil and New Zealand):

The highest SAR value for this model phone tested by Sony Mobile Communications AB for use at the ear is 0.99 W/kg (10g).

Guidelines for Safe and Efficient Use

Please follow these guidelines. Failure to do so might entail a potential health risk or product malfunction. If in doubt as to its proper function, have the product checked by a certified service partner before charging or using it.

■ Recommendations for care and safe use of our products
  • Handle with care and keep in a clean and dust-free place.
  • **Warning!** May explode if disposed of in fire.
  • Do not expose to liquid or moisture or excess humidity.
  • For optimum performance, the product should not be operated in temperatures below +5°C (+41°F) or above +35°C (+95°F). Do not expose the battery to temperatures above +60°C (+140°F).
  • Do not expose to flames or lit tobacco products.
  • Do not drop, throw or try to bend the product.

  • Do not paint or attempt to disassemble or modify the product. Only Sony Mobile Communications AB authorised personnel should perform service.
  • Consult with authorised medical staff and the instructions of the medical device manufacturer before using the product near pacemakers or other medical devices or equipments.
  • Discontinue use of electronic devices, or disable the radio transmitting functionality of the device, when required or requested to do so.
  • Do not use where a potentially explosive atmosphere exists.
  • Do not place the product, or install wireless equipment, in the area above an air bag in a car.
  • **Caution:** Cracked or broken displays may create sharp edges or splinters that could be harmful upon contact.
  • Do not use the Bluetooth Headset in positions where it is uncomfortable or will be subject to pressure.

■ Children
Warning! Keep out of reach of children. Do not allow children to play with mobile phones or accessories. They could hurt themselves or others. Products may contain small parts that can be detached and create a choking hazard.

■ Power supply (Charger)
Connect the charger to power sources as marked on the product. Do not use outdoors or in damp areas. Do not alter or subject the cord to damage or stress. Unplug the unit before cleaning it. Never alter the plug. If it does not fit into the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by an electrician. When a power supply is connected, there is a small drain of power. To avoid this small energy waste, disconnect the power supply when the product is fully charged. Use of charging devices that are not Sony Mobile Communications AB branded may pose increased safety risks.

■ Battery
New or idle batteries can have short-term reduced capacity. Fully charge the battery before initial use. Use for the intended purpose only. Charge the battery in temperatures between +5°C (+41°F) and +35°C (+95°F). Do not put the battery into your mouth. Do not let the battery contacts touch another metal object. Turn off the product before removing the battery. Performance depends on temperatures, signal strength, usage patterns, features selected and voice or data transmissions. Only Sony Mobile Communications AB service partners should remove or replace built-in batteries. Use of batteries that are not Sony Mobile Communications AB branded may pose increased safety risks. Replace the battery only with another Sony Mobile Communications AB battery that has been qualified with the product as per the standard IEEE-1725. Use of an unqualified battery may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage or other hazard.

■ Personal medical devices
Mobile phones may affect implanted medical equipment. Reduce risk of interference by keeping a minimum distance of 15 cm (6 inches) between the phone and the device. Use the phone at your right ear. Do not carry the phone in your breast pocket. Turn off the phone if you suspect interference. For all medical devices, consult a physician and the manufacturer.

■ Driving
Some vehicle manufacturers forbid the use of phones in their vehicles unless a handsfree kit with an external antenna supports the installation. Check with the vehicle manufacturer's representative to be sure that the mobile phone or Bluetooth handsfree will not affect the electronic systems in the vehicle. Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

■ GPS/Location based functions
Some products provide GPS/Location based functions. Location determining functionality is provided "As is" and "With all faults". Sony Mobile Communications AB does not make any representation or warranty as to the accuracy of such location information.

Use of location-based information by the device may not be uninterrupted or error free and may additionally be dependent on network service availability. Please note that functionality may be reduced or prevented in certain environments such as building interiors or areas adjacent to buildings.

Caution: Do not use GPS functionality in a manner which causes distraction from driving.

■ Emergency calls
Calls cannot be guaranteed under all conditions. Never rely solely upon mobile phones for essential communication. Calls may not be possible in all areas, on all networks, or when certain network services and/or phone features are used.

- Antenna

  Use of antenna devices not marketed by Sony Mobile Communications AB could damage the phone, reduce performance, and produce SAR levels above the established limits. Do not cover the antenna with your hand as this affects call quality, power levels and can shorten talk and standby times.

- Radio Frequency (RF) exposure and Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

  When the phone or Bluetooth handsfree is turned on, it emits low levels of radio frequency energy. International safety guidelines have been developed through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. These guidelines establish permitted levels of radio wave exposure. The guidelines include a safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons and to account for any variations in measurements.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) is used to measure radio frequency energy absorbed by the body when using a mobile phone. The SAR value is determined at the highest certified power level in laboratory conditions, but because the phone is designed to use the minimum power necessary to access the chosen network, the actual SAR level can be well below this value. There is no proof of difference in safety based on difference in SAR value.

Products with radio transmitters sold in the US must be certified by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). When required, tests are performed when the phone is placed at the ear and when worn on the body. For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines. Please use an accessory designated for this product or an accessory which contains no metal and which positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

For more information about SAR and radio frequency exposure, go to: *http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/product/SAR/* (in Japanese only).

■ Flight mode

Bluetooth and WLAN functionality, if available in the device, can be enabled in Flight mode but may be prohibited onboard aircraft or in other areas where radio transmissions are prohibited. In such environments, please seek proper authorisation before enabling Bluetooth or WLAN functionality even in Flight mode.

■ Malware

Malware (short for malicious software) is software that can harm the mobile phone or other computers. Malware or harmful applications can include viruses, worms, spyware, and other unwanted programs. While the device does employ security measures to resist such efforts, Sony Mobile Communications AB does not warrant or represent that the device will be impervious to the introduction of malware. You can however reduce the risk of malware attacks by using care when downloading content or accepting applications, refraining from opening or responding to messages from unknown sources, using trustworthy services to access the Internet, and only downloading content to the mobile phone from known, reliable sources.

■ Accessories

Use only Sony Mobile Communications AB branded original accessories and certified service partners. Sony Mobile Communications AB does not test third-party accessories. Accessories may influence RF exposure, radio performance, loudness, electric safety and other areas. Third-party accessories and parts may pose a risk to your health or safety or decrease performance.

■ Disposal of old electrical and electronic equipment

Electronic equipment and batteries should not be included as household waste but should be left at an appropriate collection point for recycling. This helps prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health. Check local regulations by contacting your local city office, your household waste disposal service, the shop where you purchased the product or calling a Sony Mobile Communications AB Contact Center. Do not attempt to remove internal batteries. Internal batteries shall be removed only by a waste treatment facility or trained service professional.

■ Disposing of the battery
Check local regulations or call a Sony Mobile Communications AB Contact Center for information. Never use municipal waste.

■ Memory card
If the product comes complete with a removable memory card, it is generally compatible with the handset purchased but may not be compatible with other devices or the capabilities of their memory cards. Check other devices for compatibility before purchase or use. If the product is equipped with a memory card reader, check memory card compatibility before purchase or use.

Memory cards are generally formatted prior to shipping. To reformat the memory card, use a compatible device. Do not use the standard operating system format when formatting the memory card on a PC. For details, refer to the operating instructions of the device or contact customer support.

Warning!

If the device requires an adapter for insertion into the handset or another device, do not insert the card directly without the required adapter.

■ Precautions on memory card use
   • Do not expose the memory card to moisture.
   • Do not touch terminal connections with your hand or any metal object.
   • Do not strike, bend, or drop the memory card.
   • Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the memory card.
   • Do not use or store the memory card in humid or corrosive locations or in excessive heat such as a closed car in summer, in direct sunlight or near a heater, etc.
   • Do not press or bend the end of the memory card adapter with excessive force.
   • Do not let dirt, dust, or foreign objects get into the insert port of any memory card adapter.
   • Check if you have inserted the memory card correctly.

- Insert the memory card as far as it will go into any memory card adapter needed. The memory card may not operate properly unless fully inserted.
- We recommend that you make a backup copy of important data. We are not responsible for any loss or damage to content you store on the memory card.
- Recorded data may be damaged or lost when you remove the memory card or memory card adapter, turn off the power while formatting, reading or writing data, or use the memory card in locations subject to static electricity or high electrical field emissions.

■ Protection of personal information
Erase personal data before disposing of the product. To delete data, perform a master reset. Deleting data from the phone memory does not ensure that it cannot be recovered. Sony Mobile Communications AB does not warrant against recovery of information and does not assume responsibility for disclosure of any information even after a master reset.

Loudness warning!

Avoid volume levels that may be harmful to your hearing.

FCC Statement for the USA

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference.

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any change or modification not expressly approved by Sony Mobile Communications AB may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Declaration of Conformity for SO-04E

$C \epsilon 0682 \textcircled{!}$

The Product "SO-04E" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/product/SAR/doc/ (in Japanese only).

End User Licence Agreement

End User Licence Agreement

Software delivered with this device and its media is owned by Sony Mobile Communications AB, and/or its affiliated companies and its suppliers and licensors. Sony Mobile grants you a non-exclusive limited licence to use the Software solely in conjunction with the Device on which it is installed or delivered. Ownership of the Software is not sold, transferred or otherwise conveyed.

Do not use any means to discover the source code or any component of the Software, reproduce and distribute the Software, or modify the Software. You are entitled to transfer rights and obligations to the Software to a third party, solely together with the Device with which you received the Software, provided the third party agrees in writing to be bound by the terms of this Licence.

This licence exists throughout the useful life of this Device. It can be terminated by transferring your rights to the Device to a third party in writing.

Failure to comply with any of these terms and conditions will terminate the licence immediately.

Sony Mobile and its third party suppliers and licensors retain all rights, title and interest in and to the Software. To the extent that the Software contains material or code of a third party, such third parties shall be beneficiaries of these terms.

This licence is governed by the laws of Sweden. When applicable, the foregoing applies to statutory consumer rights.

In the event Software accompanying or provided in conjunction with your device is provided with additional terms and conditions, such provisions shall also govern your possession and usage of the Software.

About Open Source Software

About Open Source Software

This product includes certain open source or other software originating from third parties that is subject to the GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Library/Lesser General Public License (LGPL) and different and/or additional copyright licenses, disclaimers and notices. The exact terms of GPL, LGPL and some other licenses, disclaimers and notices are reproduced in the about box in this product and are also available at http://opensource.sonymobile.com.

Sony Mobile offers to provide source code of software licensed under the GPL or LGPL or some other open source licenses allowing source code distribution to you on a CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution, such as the cost of media, shipping and handling, upon written request to Sony Mobile Communications AB, Open Source Software Management, Nya Vattentornet, SE-221 88 Lund, Sweden. This offer is valid for a period of three (3) years from the date of the distribution of this product by Sony Mobile.

Export Controls and Regulations

This product and its accessories may be covered and controlled by Japan's export control regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and related laws and regulations). If you wish to export this product and/or its accessories, you must complete the necessary procedures at your own responsibility and cost. For details about the procedure, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

Intellectual Property Right

About the Copyright and Portrait rights

Copyrighted contents you recorded or obtained from sites or Internet home pages using this product by downloading or other means, such as documents, images, music data, software, are prohibited from reproduction, transformation and transmission over public lines without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law.

Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use.

You should also refrain from taking a picture of other people and disclosing it by such means as posting it on a site on the Internet without their consent because of possible infringement of their right of portrait.

Trademarks

The company names and product names appearing in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "Deco-mail", "sp-mode", "WORLD WING", "WORLD CALL", "ToruCa", "mopera", "mopera U", "iD", "Xi", logo of "sp-mode", logo of "ToruCa", logo of "iD" and logo of "Xi" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO, INC.
- "Bluetooth" is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc., and Sony Mobile Communications is licensed to use them.

&Bluetooth®

- iWnn of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. is used for conversion methods for Japanese language.
  iWnn© OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2008-2013 All Rights Reserved.
- "Wi-Fi" is a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- Wi-Fi Protected Setup and Wi-Fi Protected Setup logos are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.

WiFi®
CERTIFIED

- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.

- Rovi, G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Rovi Corporation and/or its affiliates.
- "モバキャス" is a trademark of Japan Mobilecasting, Inc.
- "NOTTV" is a trademark of mmbi, Inc.
- "Xperia"and "TrackID" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Mobile Communications AB.
- "Media Go" is a trademark or registered trademark of Sony Media Software and Services.
- "PlayStation" and "⚏" are trademarks or registered trademarks or Sony Computer Entertainment Inc.
- "BRAVIA", "Sony", "Sweep Panorama", "WALKMAN", "xLOUD", "FeliCa", "Reader" and "Clear Phase" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Corporation.
- "POBox" and "POBox" logo are registered trademarks of Sony Computer Science Laboratories, Inc. "POBox" is a co-developed technology of Sony Computer Science Laboratories, Inc. and Sony Mobile Communications, Inc.

- microSD logo, microSDHC logo and microSDXC logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.
- ⚐ is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- ⓝ is a trademark or registered trademark of NFC Forum, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Twitter" is a trademark or registered trademark of Twitter, Inc.
- "Google" and "Google" logo, "Android" and "Android" logo, "Google Play" and "Google Play" logo, "Google+", "Gmail", "mobile Google Maps", "Google Talk", "Google Latitude", "Google Calendar", "YouTube" and "YouTube" logo and "Picasa" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google, Inc.
- Facebook and Facebook logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Facebook, Inc.
- mixi and mixi logo are registered trademarks of mixi, Inc.
- "DLNA" and "DLNA" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Digital Living Network Alliance.
- MHL, Mobile High-Definition Link and MHL logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of MHL, LLC.

- MHL, HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

HⅮMI

- "Microsoft", "Windows", "Outlook", "Windows Vista", "Windows Server", "Windows Media", "PlayReady" and "ActiveSync" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- This product contains technology subject to certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of this technology outside of this product is prohibited without the appropriate license(s) from Microsoft.
- Content owners use Microsoft PlayReady content access technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrighted content. This device uses PlayReady technology to access PlayReady-protected content and/or WMDRM-protected content. If the device fails to properly enforce restrictions on content usage, content owners may require Microsoft to revoke the device's ability to consume PlayReady-protected content. Revocation should not affect unprotected content or content protected by other content access technologies. Content owners may require you to upgrade PlayReady to access their content. If you

decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 visual and AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer for (i) encoding video in compliance with the MPEG-4 visual standard ("MPEG-4 video") or the AVC standard ("AVC video") and/or (ii) decoding MPEG-4 or AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed by MPEG LA to provide MPEG-4 and/or AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information including that relating to promotional, internal and commercial uses and licensing may be obtained MPEG LA, L.L.C. (See http://www.mpegla.com). MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.
- Other product and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.
  In context, TM and ® mark are omitted.
- Any rights not expressly granted herein are reserved. All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

SIM unlock

This terminal supports SIM unlock. If you release SIM lock, you can use SIM by a carrier other than NTT DOCOMO.

- The SIM unlock service is provided at a docomo Shop.
- A SIM unlock charge is separately required.
- If you use a SIM other than by DOCOMO, LTE system is not available. Available services and functions will be limited. DOCOMO is not liable to any failures or malfunctions.
- For details of SIM unlock, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Index

Make various applications or charge your billing plan, check your charges and points, and more online.

sp-mode: dmenu ⇒ "お客様サポート (Customer support)" ⇒ "各種お申込・お手続き (Various applications/procedures)" (Packet communication free) (In Japanese only)

PC: My docomo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various applications/procedures) (In Japanese only)

* When using with sp-mode, "Network security code" is required.
* When using with sp-mode, you may be charged.
* "docomo ID and password" are required for use.
* Please contact "General Inquiries" described on the last page if you forget or do not have "docomo ID and password".
* May not be available in some cases depending on the conditions of your subscription.
* There are cases where the site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.

Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

Remember to be courteous to others when you use your terminal.

Turn the power off when you are:

■ **In places where use is prohibited**
Follow the instructions of each airline or medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises. Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited.

■ **Driving**
Using a handheld mobile phone while driving will result in a penalty.
However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.

■ **In places such as theaters, cinemas, and art galleries**
Using the terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Keep your voice and ring tone down

■ Keep your voice down in quiet places like restaurants and hotel lobbies.

■ If you are in an outdoor public place, make sure you do not disturb others.

Respect privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Have good manners

The terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute the sound.

【Vibrate】(P.207)
Vibrates when there is an incoming call.
【Silent mode】(P.42)
Silent mode mutes the sounds of the terminal such as the operation sounds and the ringtone.
* Shutter sound cannot be muted.
You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail Service (P.102) and Call Forwarding Service (P.102).

General Inquiries
\<docomo Information Center\>

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish.
*Unavailable from part of IP phones.
(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.)

■From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)
📱 (No prefix) 151 (toll free)

*Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■From land-line phones (In Japanese only)
☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Unavailable from part of IP phones.
(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round))
●Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
●For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo Shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website.
NTT DOCOMO website http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/

Repairs

■From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)
📱 (No prefix) 113 (toll free)

*Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■From land-line phones (In Japanese only)
☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Unavailable from part of IP phones.
(Business hours: 24 hours (open all year round))

For loss, theft, malfunction, and inquiries while overseas (24-hour reception)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

| International call access code for the country you stay | -81-3-6832-6600* (toll free) |

*You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
*If you use SO-04E, you should dial the number +81-3-6832-6600
(to enter '＋', touch and hold '0').

From land-line phones \<Universal number\>

| Universal number international prefix | -8000120-0151* |

*You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

*For international call access codes for major countries and universal number international prefix, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.
●**If you lose your terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the terminal.**
●**If the terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.**

Don't forget your mobile phone・・・or your manners!
©When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Li-ion 00

We collect old phones, etc. regardless of brands and manufacturers. Bring them to your nearest docomo Shop.
*Items to be collected: mobile phones, PHS, battery packs, chargers, desktop holders (regardless of brands and manufacturers)

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.
Manufacturer: Sony Mobile Communications, Inc.

'13.4 (1st Edition) 1273-9504.1

SONY®